



6.16.04.

Library of the Theological Seminary,

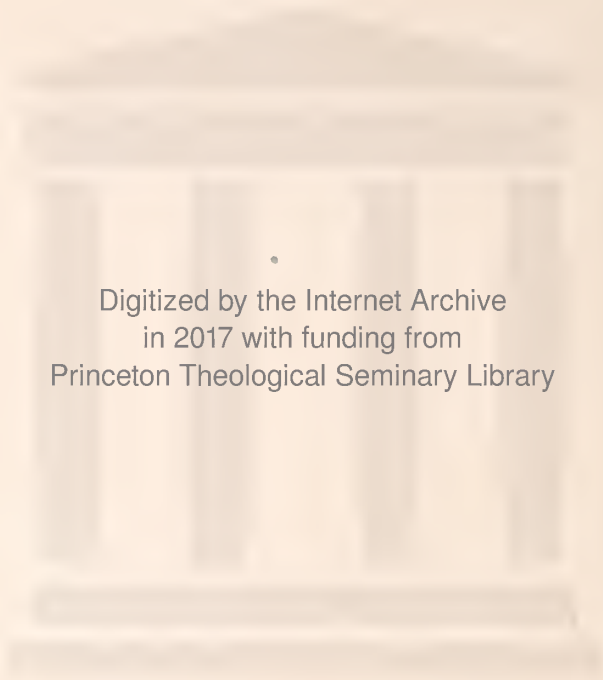
PRINCETON, N. J.

Presented by *President Patton.*

Division *SCB*
Section *10773a*







Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2017 with funding from
Princeton Theological Seminary Library

韓 英 文 法 한 영 문 법

AN

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

KOREAN SPOKEN LANGUAGE

BY

HORACE GRANT UNDERWOOD, A.M.

IN TWO PARTS:

PART I. GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

PART II. ENGLISH INTO KOREAN.

KELLY & WALSH, L'D.,

Yokohama, Shanghai, Hongkong, Singapore.

TRÜBNER & Co.,

57 & 59, Ludgate Hill,

London.

A. D. F. RANDOLPH & Co.,

38, West Twenty-third Street,

New York.

1890.

(COPY-RIGHTED).

COPY-RIGHT, 1890, TOKIO, JAPAN.

FOR

THE AUTHOR

BY

THE YOKOHAMA SEISHI BUNSHA.

PRINTED AT

THE YOKOHAMA SEISHI BUNSHA.

1890.

PREFACE.

In this introduction to the study of the Korean spoken language, a systematic grammar, in the strict sense of the word, has not been aimed at. It has been attempted simply to *introduce* the student to the study, to clear away some of the obstacles and difficulties that present themselves, and to show him the way by which he can become a proficient speaker of Korean.

Passing through Japan on my way to Korea, Dr. Imbrie's "English-Japanese Etymology" was brought to my notice; and, the plan of study there presented appealing to me as best suited to my individual needs, I decided to adopt it in the study of Korean.

In carrying out this idea, I was greatly aided by obtaining the Korean translation of Dr. Imbrie's sentences prepared by Mr. Song Soun Yong, (who had become my teacher) at the direction of Lieut. Bernardo (U.S.N.).

After correcting, arranging and adding to them, I found them of so great advantage to myself, and they proved of such valuable assistance to the many to whom I loaned them, that I determined, to carry the classification still further, to formulate rules of which the sentences should be illustrations, and to throw the whole into a form similar to Dr. Imbrie's book.

Most of this was done over three years ago, but various circumstances hindered its publication, and, in the mean time, realizing that such a work was in a measure one sided and approached the language merely from the English standpoint, a first part, which has been called "Grammatical Notes," and which views the subject from the opposite side has been prepared.

From the very nature of the case, the second part taking English idioms and phrases and showing their Korean equivalents assumes more of a practical than a theoretical form. On the other hand, the first part taking Korean phrases, idioms, sentences, showing their use among the Koreans, their structure, and their various forms, becomes more theoretical than practical.

This complete division of a work on a language into two parts, each of which approaches it from a different standpoint, has, it is believed, never been attempted in one book before, and yet it is felt that such a division will materially aid the student in obtaining an accurate and well *systematized* knowledge of neat distinctions, and idioms, and enable him more speedily to speak a pure and not an Anglicized Korean. It is true that at times, the one naturally overlaps the

other, but it is equally certain, that each has its own especial place, which the other can in no way fill, and a true conception of any language can best be obtained by viewing them separately.

The author takes pleasure in acknowledging valuable suggestions made by Prof. Homer B. Hulbert of the Royal Korean University, concerning some of the uses of the compound tenses, and also his indebtedness to Mr. A. Stewart Annand who kindly corrected much of the proof, and whose friendly assistance in many ways has greatly aided him.

Credit also is due to the pioneers in the language, the French missionaries, from whose work the author gained his first ideas of Korean grammar. To more than any one else, however, thanks are due to Mr. Song Soun Yong (宋淳容) whose sound ideas on the use of the language as it is spoken to-day, and whose intimate acquaintance with the Chinese classics, combined with his thorough knowledge of the use of the native Ernmun have been of invaluable assistance.

The author will gladly welcome any criticisms or suggestions either as to form or matter, with which students of the language may kindly favor him.

Söoul Korea.

H. G. U.

November 1889.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

CHAPTER I.

Introductory remarks on the study of Korean.

1, Difficulties surrounding the study.—2, A Korean teacher.—3, “Put yourself in his place.”—4, Approach the study from two sides.—5, Use of this book.—6, Korean written language.—7, Necessity for the study of Chinese.—8, Ernmun and Chinese rarely if ever mixed.—9, Pronunciation.—10, Errors of foreigners.—11, Arrangement of chapters.—12, Honorifics Page 1,—8.

CHAPTER II.

The Korean alphabet and its Sounds.

13, An alphabet.—14, The letters.—15.—22, Vowel sounds.—23,—27, Diphthongs and triphthongs.—28, The consonants.—29, The part euphony plays.—30,—38, Simple consonantal sounds.—39, Aspirated consonants.—40, Names of simple consonants.—41, Necessity of practice.

Page 9,—22.

CHAPTER III.

The Noun.

42, Korean noun indeclinable.—43, Distinctions of number, subject, object not made.—44, Postpositions.—45, Methods of expressing gender.—46, Ambiguity in regard to number.—47, How it may be expressed.—48, Reduplication of words.—49, These methods little used.—50, In some cases distinct words used.—51, Compound nouns and the use of a knowledge of Chinese.—52, Uses of 군, 장이, 길 etc.—53, Verbal nouns.—54, Surnames.—55, Given names, their variety.—56, Korean titles.—57, No names for women.—58, The wrong and proper use of the term 부인.

Page 23—38.

CHAPTER IV.

Pronouns and Pronominal adjectives.

59, All pronouns really nouns.—60, Personal Pronouns of the first person.—61, The second person.—62, Personal pronouns and postpositions united.—63, No third personal pronoun in Korean.—64, Pronouns not much used by Koreans.—65, Reflexive pronouns.—66, All Korean interrogatives also indefinite.—67, 어노, 엇던, and 무슴 used adjectively.—68, Indefinites made more indefinite.—69, Use of 아모.—70, Other indefinite pronouns.—71, Demonstrative pronouns.—72, Words derived from these.—73, The relatives 자 and 바 Page 39—52.

CHAPTER V.

The Numeral.

74, Two sets of numerals. Adjective and substantive forms.—75, Sinico-Korean numerals have only an adjective form.—76, List of numerals.—77, Specific classifiers.—78, Examples of their use.—79, Korean money.—80, Foreign money how designated.—81, Ordinal numbers.—82, The Korean months of the year.—83, Days of the month.—84, Used also for ordinals.—85, Hours of the day—Korean and foreign.—86, Fractions.—87, multiples.—88, Interest on money.—89, The Korean word 번.—90, Measures of length and distance.—91, Weights and grain-measures.—92, The peculiar use of 톨 and the meaning of 즈음 Page 53—71.

CHAPTER VI.

The Postposition.

93, Kinds of postpositions.—94, Simple postpositions.—95, Euphonic changes that may creep in.—96,—108, The simple postpositions considered one by one.—109, **ㅏ** and **ㅑ** considered as postpositions.—110, Postpositions combined.—111, Composite postpositions.—112, Examples.—113, Verbal postpositionsPage 71—86.

CHAPTER VII.

The Verb.

114, Difficulties ; terminations and conjunctions not distinguished.—115, Verb impersonal and no number.—116, and 117, A method of expressing number and certain forms.—118, A few so called personal forms.—119, Two kinds of verbs, active and neuter ; active verbs.—120, Neuter verbs.—121, Three voices ; active, causative and passive.—122, Method of forming the causative.—123, Causative in **ㅓ**.—124, Method of forming the passive voice.—125, But one conjugation.—126, General rules the same throughout.—127, The Basal Conjugations.—128, Each part divisible into three parts.—129, The stem.—129, No tense root for present other than **ㅖ**.—130, Past tense root.—131, Future tense roots.—132, The particle **ㅓ**.—133, Simple and compound tenses.—134, The use of the simple tenses.—135, The use of the compound tenses.—136, The form **ㅓ** defective and lack of discrimination between terminations and conjunctions.—137, Different kinds of terminations.—138, Declarative terminations—Present tense.—139, Past.—140, Future and compound.—141, Interrogative terminations—Present tense.—142, Past.—143, Future and Compound.—144, Propositional terminations.—145, Imperative terminations.—146, The parts of the Basal Conjugation.—147, Indicative mood.—148, Volitive mood.—149, Two kinds of participles.—150, Verbal participles.—151, Different forms of past verbal participle have caused discussion.—152, The two forms simply euphonic.—153, Postpositions may be affixed.—154, Illustrations.—155, The use of the verbal participle ; As connectives.—156, Introducing cause, manner, means.—157, Used also with object of principal verb.—158, In making compounds.—159, The future verbal participle.—160, Relative participles.—161, The four most common.—162, The present, its form and use.—163, The past, its form.—164, It uses.—165, Past relative participle of neuter verbs.—166, The future relative participle.—167, Future past

relative participle.—168, Progressive relative participle.—169, Each tense has its relative participle.—170, The Former Supine.—171, Verbal noun in ㅁ.—172, Verbal noun in ㅍ.—173, This latter used with ㅅ.—174, Used with ㅅ.—175, Used with ㅅ.—176, The desiderative base.—177, The negative base.—178, The principle parts.—179, The paradigm of the basal conjugation.—180, Other verbs to illustrate.....Pages 87,—141.

The Verb (*Continued*).

181, The verb with conjunctions.—182, List of these conjunctions.—183, Their union with indicative tenses.—185 to 203, The use of these conjunctions considered individually.—204, The desiderative form.—205, Another desiderative form.—206, Negative particles.—207, Formation of negative verbs.—208, The negative verb 마오.—209, Certain other negative forms.—210, Auxiliary verbs.—211, A list of some of them.—212 to 219, The uses of these auxiliaries.—220, Modifications produced by nouns forming new verbs.—221, List of these words.—222 to 226, Their uses.—227, Adverbial effect produced by nouns with postpositions when used with the verb.—228, Verb in indirect discourse.—229, The imperative verb.—230, Contractions and ellipses.—231 to 240, Some of these with their uses.—241, Illustrations.—242, The principal parts of some verbs.

Pages 141,—186.

CHAPTER VIII.

The Adjective.

243, True adjectives.—244, Adjectives used attributively and predicatively.—245, Distinctions attainable through adjectival verbs.—246, Formation of adjectives.—247, Adjectives in 슴.—248, Adjectives formed by reduplication of stem.—249, Nouns used as adjectives.—250, Comparison of adjectives—little used.—251, How formed.—252, Use of 보다.—253, Use of 예석.—254, Superlative how formed. Page 187—192.

CHAPTER IX.

The Adverb.

255, Primitive adverbs.—256, Derived adverbs. Those derived from verbs.—257, The future verbal participle used as an adverb.—258, Distinctions between these two classes of adverbs.—259, The Korean past verbal participle

used as an adverb.—260, Adverbs derived from nouns and pronouns.—261, Comparison of adverbs.—262, Primitive adverbs used with postposition.—263, Numeral adverbs.—264, Position of adverb in sentence.—265, Korean responsives.—266, Answers to negative questions. Pages 193—197.

CHAPTER X.

The Conjunctions.

267, Two classes of conjunctions—Co-ordinate and subordinate.—268 and 269, Uses of co-ordinate conjunctions.—270, Subordinate conjunctions etc. Pages 198—201.

CHAPTER XI.

Honorifics.

271, Importance of use of honorifics.—272, Persons spoken of, how honored.—273, Honorific form of verb how constructed.—274, Honorific verbs honoring the subject.—275, Honorific verbs honoring the object.—276, The two honorifics combined.—277, The use of honorific nouns, postpositions etc.—278, List of some of these nouns.—279, These honorifics not the same in all the provinces.—280, Terms for addressing servants etc. Pages 202—206.

CHAPTER XII.

The Structure of the sentence.

281, The general rule.—282, Position of the different parts of speech in relation to the words they govern or are governed by.—283, Position of the parts of a sentence.—284, Several verbs connected.—how used.—285, Indefiniteness of Korean sentences.—286, Use of two negatives.—287, The use of elliptical forms.—288, Constant absence of postpositions—verbal modification etc.—289, Use of conjunctions; the sentence and paragraph the same.—290, Need of practice. Pages 207—211.

PART II.

ENGLISH INTO KOREAN.

Chapter I. THE VERB.

§ I. The verb "To be" Page 216

§ II. The verb "To have" „ 219

§ III. Auxiliaries.

Am, Is and Are—Was, Were—Do and Did—Have, Has, and Had—
Shall and Will—Should and Would—Can and Could—May and
Might—Let, Make, Have and Get—Must—Ought and Should—
Think and Suppose—Intend—Want—Wish and Hope—Need—
Seem and Look..... Pages 222 to 256

§ IV. The Infinitives „ 256 „ 261

§ V. Passive Construction „ 261 „ 266

§ VI. Conditional Sentences „ 266 „ 268

Chapter II. THE NOUN „ 267

Chapter III. THE ARTICLE „ 271

Chapter IV. THE PRONOUN „ 273 to 276

§ I. Personal Pronouns.

Simple and Compound..... „ 273 „ 276

§ II. Relative Pronouns „ 276 „ 278

§ III. Interrogative Pronouns „ 278 „ 281

Chapter V. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

This, That, and Such—Either, Neither and Both—Each—Some—
Any—Every—No, None and Nobody—All—Several—Few—One,
Ones—Other, Another—Same—Much—Many—Most—Enough.

Pages 282 to 342

Chapter VI. THE ADJECTIVE.

§ I. Used Attributively, and Predicatively Pages 325 to 327

§ II. The Comparison of Adjectives.

Comparative degree—Superlative degree Pages 327 to 330

Chapter VII. THE ADVERB.

§ I. Adverbs of Place.

Here—There—Where Pages 331 to 336

§ II. Adverbs of Time.

Always—Whenever—Usually—Often and Frequently—Sometimes—
Seldom—Never and Ever—Again—When—While—As—Then—
Now—Already—Formerly—Recently, and of Late—Ago—Just
Now—Still and Yet—Till and Until—By and By—Soon—Direct-
ly—Before—After and Since—Long Time—Sometime—Finally
and At Last Pages 336 to 369

§ III. Adverbs of Cause, Manner and Degree.

Why—Accordingly, Consequently, and Therefore—How—So—Like
and As—Very—Only—Too—Even—Almost—About.

Pages 369 to 380

Chapter VIII. THE NUMERAL „ 381

Chapter IX. THE PREPOSITION.

At—In—On—To—From, Out of and Off—By—Through—With—
Without—Of—For—Across, Over, and Beyond—Among—Around
—Before—Behind—Between—During—Except, Besides and But
—Instead of—Over and Above—Under and Below—According to
—In accordance with Pages 383

Chapter X. THE CONJUNCTION.

And—Both.....and—Too, Also—But—Though, Although, and
Still—Either, Or, and Whether—Neither....Nor—If, and Unless
—Because—Then—That—Than.



PART I.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

OR THE

KOREAN SPOKEN LANGUAGE

FROM THE

KOREAN STANDPOINT.

1890.



PART I.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS ON THE STUDY OF KOREAN.

1.—The study of Korean is as yet in its infancy, ways and means are few, good books written in the native character are still fewer, Koreans who have any accurate knowledge of the rules of grammar and the methods of spelling are rare, and native teachers in the true sense of the word cannot be found.

Under these circumstances, the difficulties which surround the student are numerous, and while in these pages the writer tries in part to systematize the language, and to aid the student, it must be remembered that no language was ever learned entirely from books, and from the very start he must accustom his ear to accurately hear, and to retain every variety of sound,

and by unremitting effort train his tongue to reproduce them exactly.

The test of exactness in pronunciation is the ability to make one's self understood, not merely by one's own teacher and native associates, who will soon become accustomed to the wrong pronunciations, and mistakes of a foreigner, but by strangers and outsiders. The writer would therefore strenuously urge upon the learner the necessity of daily use among the people, of what he learns. Let him not be afraid of mistakes, by mistakes he must learn. Let him from the very first day, though he knows but one or two words, go out and begin to use them.

2.—A Korean teacher is of course indispensable, but he cannot be expected to teach in any sense of the word as we understand it. He is to give the exact pronunciation, to assist in reading the character, to explain forms of expression and idioms, if possible give distinctions between synonyms, and to correct the mistakes of the learner. From him the learner is to get all he can, and upon him to practice at every opportunity. He should be a good Chinese scholar ; as the Chinese enters so largely into the composition of words, and as far as possible, a man well acquainted with the native Korean character, having no knowledge of English, so that the student shall from the start be thrown upon his own resources.

3.—It must be borne in mind, that not only are the characters and words different from those to which we have been accustomed, but also the forms of expression and the idioms. The surroundings of the Korean are entirely different and his habits of thought are neces-

sarily as unlike ours as his surroundings; hence "Put yourself in his place" should be the motto of the student; he must early learn *to put himself in the place of the Korean*. He must learn to hear with Korean ears, to see with Korean eyes, to enter heartily into the life and surroundings of the Korean, to appreciate fully all their circumstances, and as far as possible in fact, to think in Korean. Until this is done at least in part, no one can become a speaker of Korean, and as long as the student continues to think in English, and to translate word for word into Korean, he will not be speaking Korean at all, but simply an Anglicized jargon of words, almost as unintelligible to the uninitiated, as Pidjin English is to the foreigner when he first lands on Chinese soil, and in many cases he will convey a meaning directly opposite to what he intends.

4.—To accomplish this end and think in Korean, we must approach the language from two sides, the Korean and the foreign. This has been the object in this work. In the first or grammar part of the book, the effort has been made to present Korean from the Korean stand point. That is to say; to take the Korean as it is, systematize it in part, divest it of everything foreign, show as far as possible how the Korean thinks and how he constructs his sentences. In the second part, on the other hand, we have tried to approach the language from the foreign stand point, and taking English ideas English thoughts and English methods of expression, to show how they would be expressed by the Korean. These have been named for convenience Parts I and II, not because the one should be studied before the other, or is of more importance, for they should be

studied together, and we should try to approach the language from the two sides at once.

5.—In the study of the second part, the student is urged to take each sentence and analyze it carefully, ascertain the “whys” and “wherefores,” notice its structure and *memorize* it ; at the same time to be reading carefully Part I, and comparing what it says with what he finds put in practice in Part II. Of course the chapter on The Alphabet and its Sounds, must be mastered first, but as soon as this is done let the student begin on the sentences in Part II, while he is at the same time reading carefully, and learning all there is to be learned in the chapter on the noun. He need not wait till he has studied the verb but simply glance at such words and terms as may be necessary.

6.—This work does not enter into the study of the Korean written language, which differs from the spoken, largely in verbal terminations and a few expressions never used in the colloquial. A little careful study, will soon acquaint one with these and their meanings, and while much hard work would be needed to make one a proficient and exact writer of “the book language,” one may soon with comparative ease understand it.

7.—In the writing of Korean, two forms of character are used, the native Ernmun and the Chinese. In all official correspondence, philosophical books, and in fact in nearly all books of real value, the Chinese character is used, the native Ernmun being relegated to a few trashy love stories and fairy tales. This difference in the written language, has led to the assertion that there are two languages in Korea, and we sometimes hear

foreigners talk of "speaking in the Ermmun." There are not two languages and this expression is wrong, for the "Ermmun" is simply a system of writing, and it would be as sensible to talk of "speaking in Munson's system of short hand." The idea that there are two languages in Korea is strengthened by the fact, that foreigners, who are perhaps tolerably well acquainted with words purely Korean, have, when they heard conversations carried on between officials and scholars, been unable to understand what was said. They have been on their way to the houses of the officials and passing through the streets and hearing the merchants the middle classes, and the coolies, talking among themselves, have been able to understand, while when they came into the presence of the officials, they have been unable to comprehend the meaning of statements and questions addressed directly to them. At once they have said "There are two languages" while the truth is that the officials have simply been using those Korean terms which have been derived from the Chinese. Chinese may be called the *Latin* of Korea. It is more polite and scholarly to use "*Latinized*" Korean; but among merchants, middle classes, and in common daily conversation this is not used: the learner does not hear it, hence the difficulty. This however being the case, it becomes necessary to make a study of these Sinico-Korean terms, for which he will find frequent and important use.

In connection with his use of these terms one thing must be borne in mind, that if a Sinico-Korean noun is used, the adjective or pronominal adjective used to qualify or limit it, should also be Sinico-Korean and

vice-versa. This rule is more apparent, and is more necessary of observation in connection with the formation of compound words.

8.—Reference was made in the previous paragraph to the two forms of writing used. They are however for the most part, kept entirely distinct, and unlike the Japanese, the two are seldom mixed. Now and then in a letter written in the Chinese, Korean particles may be interspersed to assist the reader, or in a letter written in the “Ernmun” the names of persons, places, etc., may be written in the Chinese. A few books are to be found written in both the Chinese and the “Ernmun” but for the most part, the Chinese character is written on one page with its equivalent in Ernmun on the other. The rule is however, as we have stated, not to mix the two characters, and the almost universal practice is to use either the Ernmun or Chinese alone.

9.—Great care must be exercised in the matter of pronunciation. An effort has been made in the chapter on the alphabet and pronunciation, to give rules to aid in this, but do not be satisfied with these, test each rule given, for yourself, try them with your teacher, and prove the result by conversation with natives who have not accustomed themselves to your peculiarities and mistakes.

10.—As has been observed above, Koreans think in entirely different lines from the foreigner, and we would here warn the learner against a few mistakes into which on this account, he is apt to fall. As will be stated further on, in many cases Koreans do not use the terminations, signifying number, case, etc. unless

ambiguity would be caused by their absence. It is not a universal rule, but it is so common that one is almost safe in adopting it as such, to say: "Never use such terminations unless a true interpretation of the sentence requires them."

Foreigners are apt in their efforts to speak correctly to use postpositions wherever possible, and thus to speak in what the Korean must consider a stilted manner. This almost *laconic conciseness* of speech is much more observable in the use, or rather neglect of use of the personal pronouns, and here more than anywhere else the foreigner is most apt to blunder.

11.—Native grammarians make but three parts of speech, namely; Nouns, Verbs, and Particles: and, while it might have been well in some respects to have confined ourselves to this division, it has been deemed best for the sake of convenience, to classify and arrange these three divisions under nine heads, namely: Nouns, Pronouns, Numerals, Postpositions, Verbs, Adjectives, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

As all pronouns are in reality nouns, the chapter, on the former, immediately follows that on the latter. As nearly all true adjectives, are really verbs, the chapter on verbs precedes that on adjectives.

12.—Finally we would urge that much care and pains be taken in the study of Korean honorifics. At first sight they appear so numerous and varied that the student is almost discouraged, but he will soon learn that with some trifling exceptions, the whole matter is governed by but a few rules. It is important that he address servants and attendants in low terms, and in their presence speak of himself in high terms, while in

the presence of officials and men of high rank, he must always speak of himself in low terms and address them in the highest forms. While this in theory is so contrary to the Christian idea, in practise in Korea it is almost a necessity, unless one desires to be considered entirely ignorant of both language and propriety.

CHAPTER II.

THE KOREAN ALPHABET AND ITS SOUNDS.

13.—Unlike most languages of the East, Korean has neither a syllabary like the Japanese, nor a system of characters representing individual ideas, like the Chinese, but a true native alphabet. The writing is always in syllables, each syllable forming we might say a separate character, but divisible into its component parts.

14.—The Korean alphabet contains twenty-five letters, of which eleven are vowels and fourteen consonants.

They are as follows :—

VOWELS.

ㅏ a, ㅑ ya, ㅓ ǒ, ㅕ yǒ, ㅗ ǒ, ㅛ yǒ, ㅜ u, ㅠ yu,
ㅡ eu, ㅣ i, ㅚ a.

CONSONANTS.

ㅋ k, ㅁ m, ㄴ n, ㅍ p, ㄹ r or l, ㅅ s or final t,
ㅌ t, ㅈ j, ㅇ ng, ㅎ hk, ㅊ hp, ㅌ ht,
ㅊ tj or ch, and ㅇ h.

As is stated in all books on foreign languages, it is an impossibility to give the exact pronunciation of all the letters of one language in that of another, but a few words here concerning the pronunciation and use of the above alphabet, may be a help in the study of Korean.

Of the vowels, it will be seen at once that the second, fourth, sixth, and eighth are simply modifications of the first, third, fifth and seventh, and it will be noted that this modification is shown in the writing, by the reduplication of the characteristic sign of the vowel, and expressed in the speaking, by the interposition of the sound of the English consonant *y* before the vowel sound. If then we give the sounds of the first, third, fifth and sixth, we will at once have the sounds for all of the first eight vowels.

Note.—No vowel can stand alone at the commencement of a Korean syllable, but if it has no consonant of its own must be preceded by the consonant ㅇ, which is then mute.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

15.—ㅏ. This vowel has two sounds.

(1) That of the Italian *ä* found in the English words *father*, *arm*, etc.

Ex. 알, *äl*, (*egg*); 안경, *än-gyeng*, (*spectacles*).

(2) That of the regular English short *ä* found in *mat*, *add*, etc.

Ex. 막대, *mäk-tä-gi*, (*a stick*).

16.—ㅓ. This vowel has two sounds.

(1) That of the regular English short *ö* seen in *not*, *odd*, etc.

Ex. 얼핏, ōl-hpit, (*quickly*); 어 디, ǎ-dai, (*where*);
업소, op-sǒ, (*to carry on the back*).

(2) That of the German ö, or the English *ur* of *urn*.

Ex. 어루신 님, ö-rǒ-si-nai, (*father*); 어른, ö-rum,
(*adult*), and 업소, öp-sǒ, (*to be lacking, to be not*).

17.—오. Here we can use the regular long and short English *o* sounds.

(1) Long ō, of old, etc. is for the most part found in open syllables.

Ex. 호랑이, hō-rang-i, (*a tiger*); 오, ō, (*five*).

(2) The short ǒ of lot, etc. occurs generally in closed syllables.

Ex. 봉, pǒng, (*an envelope*); 공사, kǒng-sa, (*minister*); 오늘, ǒ-nal, (*to-day*).

18.—우. From this vowel we get the sound of either the long ōō of *moon*, or the short ǒǒ of *wool*.

(1) Ex. 구경, koo-gyeng, (*a sight*); 부리, pōō-ri,
(*a beak*).

(2) Ex. 풀, hpōōl, (*herbage*).

19.—As has been said above, the compound vowels 야, 예, 요, 유, have respectively the sounds of the above four simple vowels with *y* preceding.

Then. 야 will be either yä or yǎ.

예 will be either yǒ or German yö.

요 will be either yō or yǒ.

And 유 will be yoo.

20.—으. Here we have the sound of the French eu.

Ex. 그, keu, (*that*); 그늘, keu-neul, (*shade*);
늙은이, neulk-eum-i, (*an old man*).

21.—이. This vowel has two sounds.

(1) The sound of *i* in the words *machine*, *pique*.

Ex. 비, pī, (*rain*); 시, si, (*hour*); 이샹호, i-sang-ha-o, (*to be strange*).

(2) The sound of the regular English short *i* of *ill*, *hit*, etc.

Ex. 기다리오, kī-da-rī-o, (*to wait*); 비록, pī-rok, (*although*); 십, sip, (*ten*).

22.—으. This vowel has really four sounds.

(1 & 2). The same two sounds as given for 아.

Ex.

(1) 한호, hān-ha-o, (*to hate*); 사신, sā-sin, (*ambassador*).

(2) 기다리오, ki-dā-ri-o, (*to wait*).

(3) Most commonly the sound is that of the short Italian *á* seen in staff.

Ex. 말, māl, (*horse*); 은혜, à-hai, (*boy*).

(4) The sound of *e* in cable, 오닐, ō-nle, (*to-day*); 기름, kō-rem, (*pus*); 기름, kī-rem, (*oil*).

Note.—In spelling the Koreans distinguish between 아 and 으 by a reference to their position in writing, calling 아 “upper *a*” and 으 “lower *a*.”

23.—Before we turn to the consideration of the consonants it would be well to linger a little while over a few combinations of vowels. In the following diphthongs and triphthongs, it will be seen that 오 and 우 placed before other vowels in the syllable generally give the sound of the English *w*.

The combinations most commonly used with their pronunciations are as follows.

1st. 애. This has the sound of the *ai* before *r* in *air* etc.

Ex. 개, (*a dog*) ; 배, (*I*) ; 대개, (*for*) ; 새, (*new*).

2nd. 이. This which properly should come last, is placed here because it has the same sound as the preceding :

Ex. 대신, (*instead*) ; 매우, (*very*).

24.—3rd. 에. This diphthong has the regular long sound of the English *a* in *day*.

Ex. 네, (*you*) ; 셋, (*three*).

Sometimes also it has the sound of the short English *e* in *end*.

Ex. 메느리, (*a daughter-in-law*).

It has also though very rarely, the sound of *i* in *machine*.

Ex. 메토리, (*hempen sandals*).

4th. 예. This properly has the sound of the English word *yea*.

Ex. 계란, (*eggs*) ; 예비함오, (*to make ready*).

However, after consonants where it would be hard to pronounce the *y*, the sound is the same 에 though perhaps a little prolonged.

Ex. 제일, (*the first*) ; 세상, (*the world*).

25.—5th. 와. This has the sound of *wä*, the *a* being the long Italian *a* which is seen in *father*, *last*, etc.

Ex. 과히, (*excessively*) ; 화초, (*flowers*) ; 실과, (*fruit*).

6th. 왜. Here we have number one preceded by 오 which having the effect of *w* gives us the sound of *wa* in *ware*.

Ex. 왜국, (*Japan*) ; 화, (*a torch*).

7th. 외. The exact sounds that this diphthong may have, can only be learned by practice.

Sometimes it may have the sound of *we* in *were*, as 되오, (*to become*) ; 괴롭소, (*to be troublesome*) ; sometimes that of *wa* in *way*, as 님외, (*wife*) ; sometimes almost this same sound with the *w* less distinct, as 죄, (*sin*) ; and sometimes also the sound of French *eu*, as 쇠, (*metal*).

26.—8th. 위. This diphthong being 우 placed before 어 may have either of the two sounds which are derived respectively by placing *w* before the two sounds of the latter vowel.

Ex. 1st, 월, (*moon*). 2nd, 원호오, (*to desire*) ; 권호오, (*to exhort*).

At times also it may have the sound of *wo* in *won*.

Ex. 원, (*a mandarin*) ; 권, (*a volume*).

9th. 웨. This diphthong may have any of the sounds 에 preceded by *w*, but for the most part it is restricted to the sound of *wa* in *way*.

Ex. 궤, (*a box*) ; 웨, (*why*).

10th. 위. This diphthong has the force of *w* before the long continental *i* sound and may be pronounced like the English *we*.

Ex. 귀, (*ear*) ; 귀호오, (*to be rare*) ; 뒤, (*back*).

11th. 위. This combination of vowels is rarely found, and it has the same sound as 위 though perhaps a little more prolonged.

Ex. 취호오, (*to be intoxicated*).

27.—12th. **의**. The effect of this diphthong is produced by pronouncing the two sounds of **으** and **이** together, running them into one.

Ex. **의** **사**, (*a soldier*).

Note.—There is a tendency among foreigners to pronounce this like the short *i* of *hit*, but this is wrong and should be carefully avoided.

Sometimes this becomes almost the same as the English *we*.

Ex. **의** **심**, (*doubt*).

THE CONSONANTS.

28.—Of the Korean consonants, nine are simple and five are aspirated.

The simple are **ㄱ** k, **ㄴ** m, **ㄷ** n, **ㄹ** p, **ㄷ** r or l, **ㄴ** s, **ㄷ** t, **ㅈ** j, and **ㅇ** ng.

The aspirated are, **ㅋ**, **ㆁ**, **ㆁ**, **ㆁ** and **ㆁ**.

Five of the simple consonants, **ㄱ**, **ㄴ**, **ㄴ**, **ㄷ**, and **ㅈ** are often doubled when they can be written as such, or the doubling is expressed by placing **ㄴ** before the letter. This **ㄴ** is then called “twin siot.” These double consonants may then be written:—

ㄱㄱ, **ㄴㄴ**, **ㄴㄴ**, **ㄷㄷ**, **ㅈㅈ**,
or **ㄴㄱ**, **ㄴㄴ**, **ㄴㄴ**, **ㄴㄷ**, **ㄴㅈ**.

The effect of the doubling, is generally expressed by a harder and more incisive utterance of the double consonant, while that of the aspirating, by a decidedly rough breathing. These differences can only be learned and reproduced by careful study and constant practice.

29.—In connection with the consonants and their sounds, euphony plays an important part, sometimes

completely changing the sound of the consonant itself, sometimes merely modifying, and sometimes rendering it absolutely mute. The rules of euphony cannot all be here given, but in describing the sounds of the consonants, an attempt is made to so explain them and their changes that the main difficulties may be overcome.

It may be well to notice here, that euphony plays such an important part in Korean, that it oftentimes completely changes the initial consonant of postpositions and other suffixes. In a language where the character is syllabic like the Japanese, there is not the same latitude for such changes as in a language purely alphabetic like the Korean. It is these euphonic changes in the postpositions which have led foreigners to follow in, and tenaciously hold to, the example of the French Missionaries, in Latinizing the noun and giving five distinct declensions with eleven cases each.

CONSONANTAL SOUNDS.

30.—We will consider first the simple consonants.

1st. ㅈ. This has commonly the sound of *k* in *king*
As, **값**, kap, (*price*); **가오**, ka-o, (*to go*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *g* in *give*.

Ex. **있다가**, it-ta-ga, (*in a little*), and **막대기**, mak-tă-gi, (*a stick*).

When before ㅁ (m), ㄴ (n), or ㄹ (r); this letter has the sound of *ng*.

Ex. **약물**, yang-moul, (*medicinal water*).

넉넉이, nŏng-nŏ-ki, (*enough*).

약력, yang-ryok, (*medicinal effect*).

It is impossible to express by English letters the exact sound of ㅍ doubled.

31.—2nd. ㅁ. This is pronounced like the *m* of *money*.

Ex. 머ㅁ오, mǒ-meu-o, (*to tarry*).

32.—3rd. ㅂ. This for the most part has the common sound of *n* in *panel*.

Ex. 나ㄴ, na-nǎn, (*as for me*) or 눈, noun, (*eye*).

Sometimes when followed by the vowel *i*, it has the effect of the English *y*, or may be mute.

Ex. ㄱ, yi, (*a tooth*) ; ㄱ히오, ig-hi-o, (*to be cooked*).

When preceded or followed by ㄹ *l*, both consonants take the sound of *l*, in *calling*.

Ex. 뽕노, pyel-lo, (*almost*) ; 날ㄴ, nal-lai, (*swiftly*)

33.—4th. ㅇ. Before a vowel this is mute. In Korean no vowel is allowed to stand alone, or to begin a syllable, and in cases where this would occur ㅇ is used.

Ex. 아오, a-ō, (*to know*) ; 아마, a-ma, (*perhaps*).

At the end of a syllable, this has the sound of *ng* in *song*.

Ex. 양, yang, (*sheep*) ; 병, pyung, (*a bottle*).

34.—5th. ㅍ. This commonly has the sound of *p* in English.

Ex. 밥, pap, (*rice*) ; 보오, po-o, (*to see*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *b*.

Ex. 아바지, abaji, (*father*) ; 불가불, boul-ga-boul, (*of necessity*).

Before ㅁ (m), or ㅂ (n), or ㄷ (r), it generally has the sound of *m*.

Ex. 협문, hyŏm-mun, (*side gate*); 앞니, am-ni, (*front teeth*); 십리, sim-ni, (*ten ri*).

35.—6th. ㄴ. This consonant may have the sounds of *l*, *n*, or *r*.

It has the sounds of *l* :—

(a). At the end of a word.

Ex. 말, mal, (*horse*); 불, pul, (*fire*); 밀, mil, (*wax*).

(b). When it is followed by another consonant in the same syllable.

Ex. 이다소, ai-dalp-so, (*to hate*); 사다, ga-dalk, (*reason*).

(c). When it follows or precedes the consonant. ㅂ

Ex. 칼노, kal-lo, (*with a knife*); 환란, hwal-lan, (*calamity*); 말니오, mal-yi-o, (*to prevent*).

It is pronounced *n* :—

(a). At the beginning of a word.

Ex. 리일, nai-il, (*to-morrow*).

(b). Sometimes at the beginning of a syllable in the middle of a word.

Ex. 공론하오, kong-non-ha-o, (*to consult together*).

It generally has the sound of *r*, when coming between two vowels, or between a vowel and ㅇ.

Ex. 아름답소, a-ram-tap-so, (*to be beautiful*); 일홈, ir-hom, (*a name*).

Sometimes before ㅣ, and the compound vowels, it has the sound of *y*.

Ex. 리, yi, (*profit*); 룡량, yo-ryang, (*deliberation*).

36.—7th. ㅅ. At the beginning of a word this letter has the sound of *s*.

Ex. 삼가오, sam-kao, (*to take care*); 삭, sak, (*pay*).

At the end of a word it has the sound of *t*.

Ex. 갓, kat, (*hat*); 낮, nat, (*mid-day*); 몇, met, (*how many*).

The sound of this final ㅅ is however sometimes modified by the initial letter of the syllable which follows it.

Before another ㅅ it becomes *s*.

Ex. 갓스로, kas-sa-ro, (*with a hat*).

Before ㄱ, it has the sound of *k*.

Ex. 갓기, sak-ki, (*young*); 갓고, chak-ko, (*frequently*).

Before ㅁ, it becomes *n*.

Ex. 갓모, kan-mo, (*hat covering*).

When the compound vowels ㅑ, ㅕ, ㅛ, ㅜ, are preceded by ㅅ, the *y* is mute, and they have the sounds of the corresponding simple vowels.

Ex. 상관, sang-gwan, (*importance*); 세상, sē-sang, (*the world*).

37.—8th. ㄷ. This letter has generally the sound of *t*, in *told*.

Ex. 답장, tap-jang, (*answer*); 달소, tal-so, (*to be different*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *d* in *dance*.

Ex. 대답하오, tai-dap-hao, (*to answer*); 견디오, kyun-dai-o, (*to endure*).

Before ㅈ, or any of the compound vowels, the *y* sound of the compound vowels disappears, and ㅈ has the force of *ch*.

Ex. **지경**, *chi-gyung*, (*territory*); **조소**, *cho-so*, (*to be good*).

Note.—This rule does not hold in the province of Pyang An Do where ㅈ always retains the sound of ㅈ and the *y* sound is retained in the double consonants.

At the end of a syllable ㅈ becomes ㅊ, although retaining the sound of *t*. but in some ancient books it is still found as ㅈ.

38.—9th. **ㅈ**. This consonant for the most part has the sound of *ch* in *choose*.

Ex. **잡소**, *chap-so*, (*to catch*); **쥐**, *chwi*, (*a rat*).

Sometimes it may have the sound of *j* in *joy*.

Ex. **죽이오**, *ju-gi-o*, (*to kill*).

As in the case of ㅈ so also in the case of this consonant, when followed by the compound vowels, the *y* sound is lost and that of the simple vowel only, remains.

ASPIRATED CONSONANTS.

39.—The aspirated consonants are.

ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㆅ.

As has already been said the exact pronunciation of these aspirated consonants cannot be expressed in English. Suffice it to say that, each one has a rough explosive sound of the corresponding simple consonant.

ㅋ, is aspirated *k*.

Ex. 칼, *hkal*, (*a knife*) ; 키, *hkeui*, (*height*) ; 코, *hkō*, (*nose*).

ㅍ, is aspirated *p*.

Ex. 품, *hpeum*, (*rank*) ; 풀, *hpoul*, (*grass*) ; 팔, *hpal*, (*eight*).

ㅌ, is aspirated *t*.

Ex. 함심, *htam-sim*, (*envy*) ; 토함오, *hto-ha-o*, (*to vomit*).

ㅊ, is aspirated *ch*.

Ex. 차, *cha*, (*tea*) ; 착함오, *chak-ha-o*, (*to be honest*).

ㅎ, being ㅇ aspirated has the effect of *h* in house.

Ex. 합함오, *hap-ha-o*, (*to unite*) ; 혼인, *hon-in*, (*marriage*) ; 항상, *hang-sang*, (*always*).

40.—The Koreans have given names to the nine simple consonants, but the vowels and aspirated consonants have no distinctive names, and can only be expressed by the sounds they represent. The names of the nine simple consonants are,

ㄱ—기억, *ki-ok*.

ㅋ—미움, *mi-om*.

ㆁ—니은, *ni-eun*.

ㅍ—비움, *pi-op*.

ㅌ—리을, *li-eul*.

ㅊ—시옷, *si-ot*.

ㄷ—더꿋, *ji-keut*.

ㅈ—쟈트, *jät*.

ㅎ—이항, *i-haing*.

It will be noticed that for the most part the name gives the initial and final sound of the consonant it represents.

41.—Enough has now been said to enable the student to gain an idea of the true sounds of the Korean alphabet, and some of the various modifications that they undergo. No book can ever tell him when and where long and short sounds should be used. These he must learn by practice.

CHAPTER III.

THE NOUN.

42 —Heretofore it has been the custom to consider that the Korean noun is declinable, and grammarians have variously classified the noun as belonging to, from one to five declensions, each having a number of cases varying from six to ten. There have been two causes for this, first the intimate acquaintance of those who have tried to systematize the language, with Latin and Greek, and the tendency that would thus naturally arise to make the languages conform. Secondly, on coming to Korea they found different nouns with various endings to express the same idea, and losing sight of the fact that they were but euphonic changes of various postpositions, called them cases.

The Korean noun is however indeclinable. In what has heretofore been regarded as declension, the noun itself is not *declined*, undergoes no change,*

* Note.—There are probably only three exceptions to this rule 것, 무엇 and 여럿 which may really be considered as one, since 여럿 and 무엇 are but contractions and were originally 여러것 and 무슴것. In all these words the final *t*, or *s*, is taken from the stem and prefixed to the postposition. At times also, still further contractions are made and we can have 걸 for 거슬, 무얼 for 무어슬, etc.

remains the same throughout, and the particles affixed, which have been considered as representing various cases, are rather distinct words or postpositions. These postpositions undergo a variety of changes according to the final letter of the noun to which they are affixed, but in no case do they change the noun itself. They represent the English prepositions.

43.—The distinctions of number, subject, and object, of a sentence etc, may be designated by postpositions or may be left to the context.

For Ex. 그 사람 의게 책 주어라.

lit. that man to book give.

The *exact* meaning of this sentence can only be understood by a knowledge of the circumstances. It may mean, give a book, or books, to one man or two. The man, (사람), may be man or woman, boy or girl. This indefiniteness of expression, which is a characteristic of most eastern languages, is more apparent in Korean than in Japanese. It would have been perfectly correct to have omitted the 의게 from the sentence given above. In the case of the subject and object of a sentence we find the same difficulty. As has been said before, the general rule is to omit the postposition unless the sentence taken with its context and circumstances would be ambiguous without them.

The use of the postposition giving definiteness to the sentence, often has the effect of the English definite article; and, where no ambiguity would arise without them, they may be used to express this. In the example given above, the accusative postposition

is not expressed, but if we desired to be definite we would say.

그 사람 의게 책을 주어라.

which would be "Give that man *the* book."

As also. 병터 왔소 병터 가 왔소
A soldier has come. The soldier has come.

문하인 이 고군 을 불렀소.

The gateman has called *the* chair coolies.

44.—For a full account of the postpositions, and the various euphonic changes that they undergo, see Chap. V. For convenience, however, we give in this place the postpositions representing some of the various case relations of the noun.

Nominative or subjective by: 이 or 가.

Genitive by 의.

Dative by 의게 or 안테.

Accusative by 을.

Instrumental by 으로.

Ablative by 에, 에셔, or 브터.

These postpositions are added to the noun and give the various ideas given by the above arrangement of cases, but undergo a variety of changes according to the final letter of the noun.

45.—Gender where necessary may be expressed by employing particles denoting male and female, or by the use of distinct words.

Thus we have in the case of human beings:—

A man, 사나히, 남즈, 남인.

A woman, 계집, 녀인, 녀편네.

A child, 으히; a boy, 사나히; a girl, 계집으히.

In the case of relations, different words are used.

아 바 지, Father ; 어 마 니, Mother.

할 아 바 지, Grandfather ; 할 마 니, Grandmother.

The gender of animals also is distinguished by particular names or by the prefixing of **슈** male and **암** female.

닭, a fowl ; 슈 닭, a cock ; 암 닭, a hen.

소, a bull or cow ; 슈 소 } a bull ; 암 소, a cow.
 황 소 }

꿩, a pheasant ; 슈 꿩 } a male 암 꿩 } a female
 장 씨 } pheasant ; 카 투 리 } pheasant.

말, a horse ; 상 마 } a stallion ; 피 마 }
 슈 말 } 암 말 } a mare.

The particles **암** and **슈** are not employed alone and are never applied to human beings except as terms of extreme contempt. If then we desire to speak of the gender of an animal without repeating its name, we say for the male **슈놈** or **슈것**, and for the female, **암놈** or **암것**.

그 거시 슈 닭 이냐 암 닭 이냐.

(That thing male chicken is? female chicken is?)

“ Is that a rooster or a hen ? ”

In this sentence **암** and **슈** are used adjectively, but in the following sentence we see the use of **암것** and **슈것**.

그 록기 슈 거시냐 암 거시냐.

(That rabbit male thing is? female thing is?)

“ Is that rabbit a male or a female. ”

Here the word rabbit, is not repeated, so **암것** and **슈것** are used.

46.—The same ambiguity that has been referred to in the matter of case, etc., also exists with reference to number. The Korean noun in fact has no number. Context or circumstances decide this also.

병인 다섯 오늘 아침 왔소.
(*patient five to-day morning came*).

“Five patients came this morning.”

날 두려 골으라고 말 셋을 가져왔소
(*me—to choose order horse three (accu) brought*).
“They brought three horses for me to choose from.”

그 목련화 나무에 오백 송아리 빛을 더히오.
(*that magnolia tree on five hundred blossom must be*).

“There must be five hundred blossoms on that magnolia tree.”

Note.—*Must* is not always rendered in this way. For its various renderings see Part II Chap. I. § 3 Sec. 10.

47.—At times however, either for the sake of emphasis or to avoid ambiguity, it is desirable to express a plural idea; and this may be done by the use of the particle **들** affixed to the nouns, to which in turn may be affixed any one of the postpositions.

동생, Brother.	동생들, Brothers.
눈, Eye.	눈들, Eyes.
말, Horse.	말들, Horses.
꽃, Flower.	꽃들, Flowers.
양, Sheep.	양들, Sheep.
사슴, Deer.	사슴들, Deer.

This particle **들** may also be used without the noun, and is then generally affixed to an adverb in the sentence, and gives a plural idea.

As :—

어서 들 오시오.
quickly (plur) come.

Please come quickly.

잘 들 하여라.
well (plur) do.

Do it well.

The particle **들** used in this way, generally pluralizes the subject of the verb ; and in both the above sentences it shows that the request in the one case, and the command in the second, was addressed to more than one.

48.—Students in Korea soon begin to notice the constant reduplication of nouns, verbs, syllables etc. In verbs it has the effect of signifying continued action, and is found frequently in onomatopoeic words, to designate sounds and the like, and in nouns it gives the idea of universality, or variety,

As :— **집집**, Every house.
식식, All colors or sorts.
곳곳, All places or everywhere.
나라나라, All countries.

49.—These then are the various ways of expressing case, gender, and number, which may be employed if desired, and are at times used by Koreans even when ambiguity would not exist without them. It cannot however be too carefully borne in mind that as a rule Koreans do not use them.

50.—In a few cases there are distinctive words which have a plural sense. They are, for the most part, compound words of Chinese origin, and to them again, if

special emphasis is desired the plural ending 들 may be added.

As :—

부모 or 부모들 (rare), Parents.

식구 or 식구들, Members of a family.

형제, Brethren.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

51.—There are of course a large number of compound nouns, and these by the use of Chinese may be formed at will. They may consist either of two nouns, a noun and an adjective, a noun and a verb, or of two verbs. A knowledge of the Chinese characters and their sounds in Korean, will enable the foreigner, not only to recognize these and understand their meaning at once, but also to form them for himself. We would then urge the student not only to learn these compounds whenever he meets them, but to analyze them, ascertain their derivation, learn the Chinese character and its Korean sound and thus be able when next he meets the same characters, though perhaps in different combinations, to recognize them at a glance. This study of words and their derivations will also be a great help in giving definiteness and precision to his style.

안경, "Spectacles" from 안 "eye" and 경 "a glass."

안질, "Ophthalmia" from 안 "eye" and 질 "disease."

천리경, "Telescope" from 천 "thousand," 리, "li," and 경 a "glass."

현미경, "Microscope" from 현, "exhibiting," 미, "smallness" and 경 a "glass."

화학, "Chemistry" from 화 "change" and 학, "study."

No attempt can here be made to give all, or even the most important of the words belonging to this class. The few that have been given above are sufficient to enable the student to understand this method of forming compound words, so that he can go forward and analyze these words for himself. A little care in this line will be a great help to him in his study of this class of words, and if from the beginning he makes a systematic study of all such words, in but a short time he will without difficulty be able to understand most, if not all the Sinico-Korean terms so much used in polite discourse.

52.—There are also a few words which are joined to verbs and sometimes to other nouns, making compound nouns having the sense, of “*the work of*” “*doer*” etc. Among these are **꾼**, **장이**, **질**, etc.

The first two of these refer to the *maker* or *doer* of something, both have nearly the same meaning but are restricted in their use.

장이, the more restricted, has properly the sense of “*the worker in*,” “*the maker of*” and is affixed to the name of the *thing made*, or *the work done*.

꾼, the more generally used, is a termination equivalent to the Latin “*ator*,” or the English “*er*,” and may be added to almost any word with which work of any kind is connected. Neither of these terms are respectful and are only applied to artisans, coolies, or people whose actions have, in the eyes of the Koreans, brought them to that level.

일꾼, Workman, coolie.	미장이, A mason.
교꾼, A chair-man.	개와장이, A tiler.
보행꾼, A walker.	붓장이, A pencil-maker.
작란꾼, A player, a trifler.	통장이, A hooper.
슈직꾼, A guard.	숯장이, A charcoal-burner.
룽꾼, A farm-hand.	쥬막장이, A hotel-keeper.
소리꾼, A (noiser) singer.	소목장이, A cabinet-maker.
나무꾼, A woodman.	갓장이, A hat-maker.
노름꾼, A gambler.	오입장이, A dissolute-fellow.

With reference to the termination **질**, it may be said that its use varies greatly with the locality.

It has properly the sense of "*the work of*," and is commonly joined to the name of the tool or instrument with which any work is done. By certain people, and in certain places however, its use has been very much enlarged and in the province of Kyeng Sang Do it may be heard affixed to almost any noun or verb.

The following examples illustrate its proper use:—

바느질,	Needlework.
다루리질,	Ironing.
채찍질,	Whipping.
로질,	Rowing.
붓치질,	Fanning.

VERBAL NOUNS.

53.—In Korea there are two regular ways of forming verbal nouns. They are formed by adding **ㅁ** and **기** to the verbal stem. With the verb **ㅎ오**, they will then be **ㅎㅁ** and **ㅎ기** and we designate them verbal noun in **ㅎㅁ**, and verbal noun in **ㅎ기**. While a large number of Koreans have come to consider these as synonyms, and to use them interchangeably, they are not the same, and good scholars never consider them so. The dis-

tion made by the French missionaries in their admirable “Grammaire Coréenne” should always be maintained.

The noun in **힘**, is an abstract noun referring to the quality or attribute as *love, hate, and fear*.

The noun in **하기**, retains more of the verbal idea and is rather, the act of *loving, hating, fearing*, and would be used where we would employ either the infinitive of the verb, *to love, to hate, to fear*, or the present participle.

It is about equivalent to the Latin Supine, being a verb in force and a noun in form and inflection. It can both govern and in turn is governed. In use it is generally employed as we would employ the ablative Supine.

An examination of the following sentences will make this distinction plain.

Illustrating the use of Verbal noun in **힘** :—

무서움이 겁장이 의게 당흔 거시오.

Fear belongs to cowards.

착함이 덕이 되오.

Honesty is a virtue.

분함이 고로움을 내오.

Anger brings trouble.

Illustrating the use of verbal nouns in **하기** :—

원슈 용서하기가 어렵소.

It is hard to forgive an enemy.

시방은 온 세상을 도라 돈이기 쉽소.

Now, it is easy to go round the whole world.

그런 사람 사랑하기 어렵지안소.

Loving such a man as that, is not hard.

Illustrating the use of both verbal nouns together :—

마음에 사랑함이 있는 사람을 남을 사랑하기 쉽소.

It is easy for a man who has love in his heart to love others.

죽음이 압히 앞선즉 죽기를 면할수 업소.

As death is before us, to avoid dying is impossible.

NAMES AND TITLES.

54.—A few words here about Korean given names and titles, may be a help to the student. The Korean surnames are but few and for the most part consist of but one syllable. A few, but five or six at the most, consist of two syllables. The total number of surnames in Korea, being under a hundred, can be learned with comparative ease. In writing their surnames they seldom use any but the Chinese character, and it is a necessity for almost any one who expects to have much dealing with Koreans, to learn these eighty or hundred characters. The ending 가 may be added to the surnames with the sense of *the family, tribe, household of*, as 민가 “The Min family” or “the Mins,” 리가 “The Yi family” “the Yis” etc. While it is perfectly proper, and no act of disrespect to use this ending in speaking of any family or person; in their presence or in addressing them, it is not polite. This ending 가 is also used in speaking of, or addressing servants. It would not be proper in sending for your gateman to say—

박석방 불러 오너라 or “Call Mr. Pak.”

but—

박가 불러 오너라. “Call Pak.”

It may be well here, however, to state that the ordinary Korean way of summoning a servant, is not to use the surname at all, but the given name.

To these surnames may be prefixed or affixed names of towns or places. If the name of the town precedes the surname, it signifies that the place mentioned was the original home of the branch of the family spoken of. In a country where surnames are so limited, this becomes a necessity.

When the name of the place follows the surname it may have one or other of two significations; that most common is, that the party referred to, is now, or was lately the magistrate of that place.

Among travelling peddlars however, this same method has been adopted to designate their domicile.

안동 김가 The "An Dong Kims," or the Kims of An Dong.

청풍 김가 The "Chyeng Pung Kims."

전주 리가 The "Chyeng Ju Yis."

연안 리가 The "Yern An Yis."

but—

조 चु산 "Cho Chuk San" means the Cho who is now, or was lately, magistrate at Chuk San.

리 고향 "Yi Ko Yang," the Yi who was, or is, magistrate at Ko Yang.

Among pedlars—

리 강계 "Yi Kang Gay" means that Kang Gay is Mr. Yi's home.

한 의주 "Han Eui Ju," that Eui Ju, is Mr. Han's home.

55.—In connection with the Korean given names, there appears to the foreigner an almost unlimited

amount of confusion. He hears a man with whose name he is acquainted called by a name entirely different, and is told that it is still his name, his given name. A boy whom he has known for years, marries; and coming to pay his respects, sends in a card bearing a name that he has never before seen. This too, the foreigner learns is his given name. This apparent confusion arises from the fact that each Korean has several given names, and that by which he was known as a boy, is entirely put aside on his attaining manhood. We shall here speak of but three classes of names: the civil name, the name held during boyhood, and that given at marriage.

The civil name is properly only found among the nobility and upper classes. It is the name by which the individual is legally known from boyhood up, and continues with him throughout life. It always consists of two characters, one of which will have been settled generations before, and all the members of the same generation of any one family will have this same character and will be *called* brothers.

As:— 민퇴호, 민두호, 민점호.

Here the presence of the same character 호, as the last half of all their names shows that they are of the same generation. Their sons will be—

민영익, 민영춘, 민영환.

Here the second character 영, is the same throughout. In the next generation it will again be the third character that will be the same and it will be 식.

As:— 민응식, 민영식, 민중식.

And thus it alternates from the second to the third character of their names, the surname of course as in all Eastern languages coming first and the remaining character being left to the option of the parents.

In common use among friends, however, this civil name is seldom used. As a boy, he has a boyish name, given him by his parents at his birth, which remains with him until his marriage. On this occasion, his parents *again* give him another name: that by which he was known as a boy is no longer used, and his friends now call him by his **조**, or name given at marriage. At times, also, friends give complimentary names and nicknames of which we need not speak here.

56.—The titles by which Koreans are known and addressed: with the officials, follow the office held; with those who are not officials, they are **석방** (Mr.) **석사** (Esq.) **성원** (Revered Sir) and many others. To these at times are added the honorific particle **님**, and we have **석방님**, or **성원님**. All these are affixed to the surname, and when used, the civil, or given name must be dropped. In addressing or speaking of old men or those whose rank gives them the right to wear the jade button, we use the word **령감**: and those whose rank gives them the right to wear the gold button, are spoken of as **대감**. But when these words are used, it is as independent titles without the surname. The use of the surname with either of these words is habitual among certain classes; but is not considered good Korean and should be avoided.

57.—One of the surprising facts which meets the Westerner on his arrival in Korea, is that the girls and

women of the land have no names. Parents give a pet name to little girls as well as to boys, at their birth ; but after they have reached the age of ten, this name is no longer known. From this time on, they are known as “ Mr. Kim’s daughter ” or even “ Mr. Kim’s girl baby ;” and strange to say the latter term is the more honorific. When there is more than one daughter in the family, they are distinguished by such words as : “ big ” (for the eldest), “ second,” “ third,” “ fourth,” etc.

After marriage, they are known by their husband’s name and title, with the word 덕 or 집 (house) affixed.

As :—

김석방 덕 Mrs. Kim.

리참관 덕 Mrs. Yi Champan or Lady Yi.

한석방 집 Mrs. Han.

Of these two, 덕 is the more honorable.

They may also be designated by the name of the place from which they came when marrying, prefixed to such words as 마님 or 마루타님, if the person is old ; or to 아기씨 or 아씨, if young.

As :—고양 마님 or 고양 마루타님, The old lady who came from Ko Yang.

공쥬 아씨 or 공쥬 아기씨, The young lady from Kong Ju.

It should always be remembered in connection with the names for women and girls that it is not customary in Korea for any except relatives or those extremely intimate to ask concerning the female members of another’s family.

58.—Before closing this subject, a remark or two on the Korean employment of the word 부인 that has come into such common and erroneous use by foreigners, should be given. This term 부인 is properly equivalent to the English title,—“Lady”: and if strictly used can only be applied to the wives of high officials. Even then it is not in common use, and the official himself would not use it in speaking of his own wife; unless perhaps in addressing a foreigner, who, he feared might not understand another word. It would however be proper in speaking *of* the wife of a high official to use this term where in English we would use “Her Ladyship.” In speaking of one’s own wife the terms 안희, 안악, 안, etc., would be used; or in addressing an inferior, 아씨, 아기씨, 마님, 마루라님. In referring to the wife of another (outside of high officials) 덕, 집, etc., should be preferred.

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

59.—With reference to Korean pronouns, it is doubtful whether such in the true sense of the word really exist. It is so easy, with most of the words used for pronouns to trace out their original meaning, and to show that they are really nothing but nouns which have either become restricted in use to one or other of the three persons, or else are convenient words, either by the designation of one's self or others, for rendering honor or its opposite to the person spoken to or of; that we are tempted to believe that by diligent research we should find that all the pronouns were originally nouns. We are strengthened in this idea by the fact that the native grammarians arrange their words into but three classes, including all pronouns under the head of nouns. For the sake of convenience, however, it has been deemed best to treat of these words by themselves; and in the consideration of Korean pronouns and pronominal adjectives, we will divide them into Personal, Reflexive, Interrogative, or Indefinite, Demonstrative, and Distributive.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

60.—The First Person. The word most commonly used to render the first person is 나, 내, or 내가: many other words, however, are also used, as, 자기, 제가, 호인 as well as many others. 자기 is properly “one’s self”; 제가, “this one,” 호인 “the little man.”

우리 or 우리가, is used to express the first person plural; and to this may be added the plural ending 들 which hardly makes a plural of a plural, but simply emphasizes the *we*.

우리 is not restricted in meaning, to the first pers. plural; but is a somewhat more polite way than 나, of expressing the first pers. sing.

For Ex:—우리 집, *lit.* “our house,” means, “my house,” “home.”

우리 안희, “our wife,” means, “my wife.”

It would hardly be considered proper to say 내 부인, 내 집.

61.—The Second Person. The equivalents of a pronoun of the second person, from the very nature of the case, are extremely numerous: the most common is 니, 네, or 네가. This word however has a low or disrespectful meaning, and is applied for the most part, to none but inferiors; still it is the nearest to a true personal pronoun of the second person. When we come to use any other word, it at once assigns a rank or grade, which 니 does not, and hence it has been used for the second person in addressing the Deity, as in the Lord’s Prayer. A study of the true meanings of any of its equivalents, some of which are given below,

will at once make plain the impossibility of using any one of them, and the necessity of either using **네** in this case, or of not translating the word *thou* at all, but of replacing it by some other word, such as **주** (*Lord*). Other words that may be used to represent the second person are **즈네**, **공**, **당신**, **로형**, (*Elder brother*), **어루신네**, (*Aged father*).

The plural of the 2nd Person. is **너희** to which, like **우리**, may be affixed the plural ending **들**, and with the same effect.

62.—As in the case of nouns, so also in the case of these pronouns, they may be followed by postpositions; but, like other nouns, the postposition need not be affixed unless the sense demands it.

Euphony has played more than its accustomed havoc with the postpositions when affixed to the pronouns **나**, **우리**, **너**, **너희**. Various contractions have taken place, so that it may be said that the personal pronoun and postposition have become one; and no matter what may have been the condition of affairs originally, the contractions as they exist to-day, present us with what may be termed a declension.

For the convenience then of the student, we give these pronouns with their postpositions affixed, and the contractions that they have undergone.

Stem.	나	.....	I.
Nom.	내 or 내가	.....	I.
Gen.	나의	contr. into.	내.....My.
Dat.	나의게	„ „	내게...To me.
Accus.	나를	„ „	날.....Me.
Instrum.	나으로	„ „	날노...By me.

Stem.	우리	.....	We.
Nom.	우리가	.....	We.
Gen.	우리 의	contr. into. 우리	...Our.
Dat.	우리 의 게	,, ,,	우리 게 ..To us.
Accus.	우리 를	.....	Us.
Instrum.	우리 로	.....	By us.

Stem.	너	.....	Thou or you.
Nom.	네 or 네가	.....	Thou or you.
Gen.	너 의	contr. into. 네	.....Thy or your.
Dat.	너 의 게	,, ,,	네 게 .....To thee, or to you.
Accus.	너 를	..	.....Thee or you.
Instrum.	너 로	.....	By thee or by you.

Stem.	너희	.....	You.
Nom.	너희 or 너희가	.....	You.
Gen.	너희 의	contr. into. 너희	...Your.
Dat.	너희 의 게	,, ,,	너희 게 .To you.
Accus.	너희 를	.....	You.
Instrum.	너희 로	.....	By you.

63.—Third Person. There is in Korean, no third personal pronoun ; and we are safe in saying that this language has no equivalents for *he, she, it, they*, etc.

The words and phrases that foreigners are apt to use in the place of these pronouns are in no sense their equivalents. We do not mean to say, that the phrases and sentences in which those equivalents are used are

not good Korean ; but we do mean to say that they are not true translations of the sentences which they are meant to represent.

For Ex:—Among the words most commonly used by foreigners, and by Korean students of English, to represent these terms, are the Korean demonstrative pronouns either with or without an additional word as *것*, or *사름*, and

더 사름 왔소,

has been taken as the equivalent of

He has come.

The sentence given above is correct enough Korean, but it does not mean “ he has come ;” and never can be properly used where we would employ those words, it means simply,

That man has come.

Again 더것 가져 오너라,

does not mean.

“ Bring *it* ;” but “ Bring *that* ;”

Where in English we use the personal pronouns of the third person, it is always when immediately speaking of the person, thing, or place represented by the pronoun ; and when in Korean we do this, the pronoun is *not translated*.

He has come

becomes then simply, *왔소*.

Bring *it*

is simply, 가져 오너라.

In places where special emphasis is needed, or where in contrast, one party or thing is spoken of with the personal pronoun, a circumlocution such as “the person spoken of,” or either a demonstrative, or reflexive pronoun may be used.

The few examples given below will help to illustrate this point :—

송석방이 어제 와서 돈 줄수 업다 하였소.

Mr. Song came yesterday and said he could not let me have the money.

내게 돈 주면 모르게 하시오.

If you give me money don't let him know about it.

아바지논 흉보고 어머니논 사랑하오.

He ridicules his father but he loves his mother.

유모 보거든 오라고 하시오 아기를 너져버려서 말석
브러 울었소.

If you see the Amah tell her to come; she has forgotten the baby, and he's been crying a long time.

이사이 김석방을 보았소 아니오 체물문 가서
아직 도라오지 아니 하였소.

Have you seen Mr. Kim lately? No, he went to Chemulpo and has not come back yet.

나는 이월 안희 다 잡겠것 마는 그논 리월 안희 못
잡겠소.

I will pay you all this month, but he won't pay till next month.

아니오 우리 형님은 장স্য요 그논 천성이오.

No, my brother is the merchant: he is the teacher.

64.—These then are the various ways that Koreans have of expressing the first, second, and third persons; but it must not be forgotten that their use is much more restricted by the native than by the foreigner. For the most part it is left entirely to the surrounding circumstances, or to the context, to decide what may be the subject or object in the sentence. Throughout this work, in many places where we have translated I, it might equally well have been *he* or *you*, or *vice versa*. Of course with reference to the second pers., one is so often desirous of being polite or of assigning to the person spoken to, his proper station, that words are much more frequently used to represent the second person, than any other.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

65.—There are a few words in Korean that are used with or without the personal pronouns given above and have a reflexive sense. They are:—

저, 제, 제가, and 자기.

These words have properly the sense of *self*, *one's self*, *himself*, etc.

There are several other words that also have this same reflexive idea: 친히 (properly), 스스로 (of itself), 손수 or 손조 (with his own hand), 그하로 (of itself), and 절로 (by nature). These latter cannot be called reflexive pronouns, those first given, only are such, but these which are really adverbs or nouns with the post-position 로 having the same effect are given here.

The word 서로 (*mutually*) may be termed a reflexive pronoun, and will be rendered into English by *each other* or *one another*.

The word **피쳐** may in a sense be termed a reflexive pronoun. It has the sense of “*either this or that*,” “*both*,” and is used largely when comparing two people or things etc. It can sometimes be translated by the English “*each other*.”

은전 이나 지전 이나 { As far as use is concerned, the
쓰기논 피쳐 곳소. silver dollar and the paper
 dollar equal each other.

아라사 황제와 덕국 { As for the Emperors of Ger-
황제가 권은 피쳐 many and Russia, in rank,
곳소. the one equals the other.

This same reflexive idea is given to certain verbs derived from the Chinese, by prefixing **즈** as **즈매호오**, (to sell one's self); **즈침호오**, (to lance one's self); **즈득호오**, (to obtain by one's self) and many others.

For examples please see Reflexive Pronouns. Part II.

INTERROGATIVE OR INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

66.—All Korean interrogatives have also an indefinite sense: hence, what would be two classes in English, form but one in Korean.

They are:—

누, **누구**, **누가**, **넌**, **넌가**, Who, some one.

어느, Which, a certain, some.

엇던, Which, what kind of, a certain.

웬, What kind of, a certain.

무슴, Which, some.

무엇, What, something.

Of these **누**, in its various forms, and **무엇** having more of a pronominal than an adjectival use, may be joined to any of the various postpositions; and when this is done like the personal pronouns they undergo

various contractions. For convenience, then, they are given below with the various postpositions and their contractions.

Stem.	누 or 닙	.....	Who or some one.
Nom.	누가 or 닙가	.....	Who or some one.
Gen.	누의 contr. into 닙	.....	Whose or some one's.
Dat.	누에게 ,, ,, 닙게	.....	To whom or to some one.
Acc.	누를	.....	Whom or some one.
Instr.	누로 or 닙노	.....	By whom or by some one.

Stem.	무엇	.....	What or something.
Nom.	무엇 or 무어시	.....	What or something.
Gen.	무어시	.....	Of what or of something.
Dat.	무어식게	.....	To what or to something.
Acc.	무어술 contr. into 무얼	...	What or something.
Instr.	무어소로 ,, ,, 무얼노	..	By what or by something.

67.—어느, 엇던 and 무슨, being always used adjectively, cannot be united with the various postpositions. If it is desired to use these as pronouns it can only be done by joining them to such words as, *사람, 이, 것*, etc. The distinctions between these are not always observed by Koreans.

엇던 means rather, *what kind of*, or indefinitely a *certain*.

어느, Means rather, *which* of a number.

무슨, Has the idea of *what*.

As :— 엇던 사람 이오.

What kind of a man is he ?

어느 사람 이오.

Which man is it ?

더 무슨 사람 이오.

What man is that ?

The answer to the first would tell whether the man was good or bad, rich or poor; the answer to the second simply decides which one of a number; while the answer to the third states whether he is a farmer, labourer, or what his business is.

In using these words indefinitely an adherence to these distinctions should be aimed at, though it is not always possible.

68.—These interrogatives, may be made still more indefinite by affixing to them the Korean equivalent of the English *either* or *whether*. As 누구냐, 누구던지, (A contraction of 누구이던지), 누굴런지, (A contraction of 누구일런지), 누구라도.

These really have rather the sense of *any one whatever*, *whoever*, and the other pronouns may be treated in the same way, with a like result.

69.—It has been said above that the interrogative pronouns take the place of the indefinites; but the pronoun *아무* (*any*) has an indefinite sense only, and may be used both adjectively, and pronominally. When used pronominally it may be joined with any of the various postpositions. Like the other indefinites it may be made more indefinite as in ¶ 68.

70.—Some of the numerous other indefinite pronouns are as follows.

더러. (*some*) signifies a part or portion of anything.

더러...더러 or 더러논...더러논 are equivalent to the English “some...some” or “some...others.”

남, (*other, others, another*) applies to people generally, as distinguished from one's self.

다, 모두, 모든, 온, (*all*) may be used almost interchangeably. 다 and 모두 are employed substantively, and at times we can use them with one or other of the postpositions, 모든 can only be used adjectively, and cannot therefore be united with said postpositions; 온, signifies all in the sense of the whole, with reference to extent or duration. It is used solely as an adjective, and can only be used as a pronoun by the addition of some such word as 통, becoming then 온통 (*the whole, the entirety*).

여러, 여럿, 여러히, (*several, a good number, many*) may be used either substantively or adjectively, the first form alone can be employed as an adjective; and to the other two only, can the postpositions then be affixed.

마다, 각, (every), 각, (each separate) and 식 (a piece) are all distributive indefinite pronouns and may at times be used interchangeably. They differ, however, in their use in some respects.

마다 and 각 are, respectively, the pure Korean and Sinico-Korean equivalents for the same idea. 마다 should then, properly, be only used in connection with pure Korean terms, and always follows the noun which it distributes. 각 On the other hand can only be used with Sinico-Korean terms, and precedes its noun.

Note.—While with most words this rule is rigidly observed, there are exceptions with these terms, and we do find 마다 at times acting as distributor for a Sinico-Korean term, and 각, for a pure Korean; but this is not elegant

ㅍ and 마다 have properly the sense of *every*, and refer to the separate individual parts constituting a whole, regarded *one by one*.

각 on the other hand, refers rather to *each separate* individual; and denotes *every one* composing a whole, considered separately from the rest.

식 generally means *at a time, together*; but used with the pronoun 하나, has the sense of *one at a time* or *each*. Quite often we find this used together with 각, 마다, or ㅍ.

It may also, at times, have the sense of *each* when standing alone.

셋씩 주어라.....	{	Give three each.
		or
	{	Give three of each.

씩명 열량 받았소	{	Every man received ten
		nyang.

사람 마다 먹을 거술 ㅍ	{	Give every man enough
ㅍ히 주어라.		to eat.

말 마다 사람 하나씩	{	Each horse had a rider.
토소.		

각 나라 풍속이 다르오.	{	Each country has its
		own customs.

For further examples see Part II. the chapter on Pronominal adjectives.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

71.—In Korean there are three commonly known, and constantly used, demonstrative pronominal adjectives : 이, 더 and 그. While at times they are employed sub-

stantively, they are for the most part used as adjectives : and when the pronominal form is needed, it is more common to affix such a word as **것** or **사물** etc., than to use the demonstrative alone. It is admissible, however, to employ any one of them substantively, and then there may be affixed to them, any of the various postpositions. This use is not at all common, and when referring to persons, is extremely disrespectful and contemptuous. In uniting with the various postpositions there are no contractions and nothing need here be said with reference to it.

Used as adjectives, of course they cannot be joined to the postpositions, and they precede the noun they limit.

이 is equivalent to *this*.

여 is equivalent to *that*, and is used of things near at hand or in sight.

그 also is equivalent to *that* ; but refers to things remote and not in sight.

72.—From these three demonstratives are formed various adverbs, verbs and adjectives, that are much used by Koreans and all of which retain these distinctions. We have from **이** ; **이러** (*thus*), which becomes a verb **이러하오** or **이러소** (*to do thus* or *to be so*). From this verb we get **이러하** or **이런** an adjective meaning *such*, in the sense of *such as this* : and the adverb **이러케** (*thus, in this way*). From **이** we also get **이리** (*here*), and **이리로** (*by this way or hither*).

In like manner we get adverbs, verbs and adjectives

from all of these demonstratives, and the following table of some of them may be of use.

이, This (Subst. and Adj).	더..(near)..	그, (far) { That (Subst. and Adj).
이것, This (Subst).	더것	그것, That (Subst).
이러하오 } { To do it in this way.	더러하오 }	그러하오 } { To do it in that way.
이렇소 } { To be so.	더렇소 }	그렇소 } { To be that way, thus.
이러흔 } { This kind of.	더러흔 }	그러흔 } { That kind of.
이런 } { Such as this.	더런 } ...	그런 } { Such as that.
이러 } { In this way,	더러 }	그러 } { In that way,
이러케 } { thus.	더러케 } ...	그러케 } { thus.
이리, Here.	더리	그리, There.
이리로 { By this way,	더리로 ...	그리로 { By that way, thi- hither. ther.

Note.—From these three words again, have been derived three exclamatory demonstrative pronouns expressing disgust. They are, **요**, **조**, and **고**. They are much used, but only as exclamations of disgust, and cannot be called elegant Korean. Ex. **요놈**, This fellow.

73.—In Part II. when speaking of relative pronouns, it is stated that in Korean there is no such thing. There are, however, two words that have by some, been classified as demonstrative pronouns, that in a sense hold this place. They are the words **쟤** and **바**. They are only used with relative pronouns, and may be said to express *that which, he who*, etc. The “which” or “who” being then considered the subject of the verb contained in the preceding participle. It must be remembered, however, that the employment of these words is largely restricted to books.

CHAPTER V.

NUMERALS.

74.—From the very nature of the case, the conditions of the Korean language present us with two sets of numerals. The one pure Korean, the other Sinico-Korean.

The pure Korean numbers carry us only as far as ninety-nine, and above this we are forced to rely entirely upon those derived from Chinese.

The pure Korean numbers may serve either as substantives or adjectives, and a few of them have two forms, which may be termed, “respectively” *substantive form*, and “*adjective form*.” With the number ᄃᆞ the substantive form can never be used adjectively, in all the others it may; but the special adjective form can never take the place of the substantive. To the substantive forms may be affixed the various postpositions, but this of course cannot be done with the adjective forms. Commonly the adjective forms are only used as high as six. Of course the rule given before, concerning the use of Sinico-Korean and pure Korean terms, holds here also: and properly the pure Korean numerals can only be used qualifying pure Korean nouns.

When the substantive form is used, it does not qualify the noun as an adjective ; but stands in apposition to, and follows it. This being the case, when this is done, we may often find a Sinico-Korean word standing in apposition to a pure Korean numeral substantive.

The adjective and substantive forms from one to six are given below.

ADJECTIVES.	SUBSTANTIVES.	
한	하나	One.
두	둘	Two.
세	셋	Three.
네	넷	Four.
닷	다섯	Five.
엣	여섯	Six.

75.—The numerals derived from the Chinese have but one form, and that adjectival. Until we get above ninety-nine they may only be properly used with Sinico-Korean words, and must always precede the words which they qualify. When a substantive form is desired, it can only be rendered by the use of some other Sinico-Korean word, or one of the numerous “ Specific Classifiers ” some of which will be given further on, which word will then stand in apposition to the noun. As in the case of the pure Korean numeral, so also here, when this is done we may have a Sinico-Korean numeral, qualifying a Sinico-Korean noun, which latter stands in apposition to a pure Korean noun. In paging, figuring and numbering, the Chinese characters themselves are used, and one seldom meets with the Korean numerals spelled out in the Ernmun.

Even in Ernmun books, the paging will be in Chinese characters, and quite often in letters written in the native character, where numbers are mentioned, the Chinese characters may be used.

76.—We give below a list of the Korean cardinal numbers, giving first the Chinese character, then the pure Korean, and lastly the Sinico-Korean.

	KOREAN.	SINICO-KOREAN.	
一	하나	일	One.
二	둘	이	Two.
三	셋	삼	Three.
四	넷	소	Four.
五	다섯	오	Five.
六	여섯	륙	Six.
七	일곱	칠	Seven.
八	여덟	팔	Eight.
九	아홉	구	Nine.
十	열	십	Ten.
十一	열 하나	십 일	Eleven.
十二	열 둘	십 이	Twelve.
			Etc.
二十	스물	이십	Twenty.
二十一	스물 하나	이십 일	Twenty-one.
二十二	스물 둘	이십 이	Twenty-two.
三十	절흔	삼십	Thirty.
四十	마흔	소십	Forty.
五十	쉰	오십	Fifty.
六十	예순	륙십	Sixty.
七十	일흔	칠십	Seventy.
八十	여든	팔십	Eighty.
九十	아흔	구십	Ninety.

百	백 or 일백	One hundred.
二百	이백	Two hundred.
三百	삼백	Three hundred.
四百	사백	Four hundred.
五百	오백	Five hundred.
千	천 or 일천	One thousand.
二千	이천	Two thousand.
萬	만 or 일만	Ten thousand.
二萬	이만	{ Twenty thousand.
十萬	십만 or億억 ...	{ One hundred thousand.
百萬	백만 or 兆도 ...	One million.
千萬	천만 or 京정 ...	Ten million.

SPECIFIC CLASSIFIERS.

77.—As has been said above, the Korean numeral has both an adjective and a substantive form. Its adjective form may be used in direct connection with the word which it limits, when it precedes it ; but the Korean much prefers to place the numeral with some other word, which stands in apposition to the noun limited, after the noun, as in English, we speak of so many “ head of cattle ” so many “ sheets of paper,” so also in Korea is this form used. It is, however, carried much further there ; and we find a large class of words that are used for this purpose. They have been variously termed “ numerals,” “ auxiliary numerals,” “ classifying numerals,” and “ classifiers ;” but it seems to us that the term “ specific classifiers,” answers more nearly the demands of the case. The following list of those most commonly in use, will greatly aid the stu-

dent; and we would urge that he take pains to make himself intimately acquainted with all, and with their use, as a mistake in this line is extremely ridiculous in the eyes of the Koreans.

개, 箇, Numeral for almost all small things, or of things of which a number may be used.

꺇, Piece, roll, bolt. Used for all piece goods.

권, Volume, numeral for books. Also a measure of paper consisting of twenty sheets.

꺇리, Pair, numeral of all things that are made in pairs.

마리, Numeral for all animals.

명, Numeral for men.

낫, (*A grain*). Used for almost all extremely small things.

갹, Numeral for hats, mats, etc.

벌, Suit, suite, a complete set, an outfit. Numeral for sets.

부, The same as 꺇리, used for things made in pairs and also for books.

병, The same as 자로. Numeral of things that one grasps in using.

필, Numeral for horses and oxen. Also used for 꺇 *q.v.*

편, Slice. Used of dried beef and fish, etc. Also; Page, chapter, book.

쌍, Brace, couple, pair. Of animals and things that go in couples but whose usefulness is not impaired when used singly.

섬 or 석, Bag, sack. Used of grains, etc.

떼, Numeral for flocks, broods, crowds, etc. A company, a crowd, a flock.

덩이, Measure of paper. 100 권. Numeral of all large round things, as,—pears, pumelos, loaves of bread.

동, Bundle. Numeral of things bound together.

자로, The same as 병. Numeral for all things that are grasped in using.

짝, Numeral for one of pairs.

장, Sheet, leaf. Numeral for such, and for letters and notes. Used also for chapters of a book.

좌, Numeral for houses, tables, chairs or anything that sets firmly on a broad base.

씩, Piece, numeral for parts of anything.

척, Numeral for boats, and animals that walk.

78.—The following are a few examples of the use of the above words.

개. 비 한 개 사 오너라. Buy a pear.

켜리. 짝신 한 켜리 사면 You had better buy a pair of straw shoes.

마리. 개 두 마리가 서로 Two dogs are fighting together.

명. 일본 군수가 몇 명 How many Japanese soldiers are there?

낫. 곡식을 한 낫 도 흘리지 마라. Do not drop a single grain of corn.

쌍. 더 집에 비둘기 두 쌍 There are two pair of pigeons on that house.

동. 나모 한 동에 잡시 얼 What is the price of a bundle of wood?

자로. 붓시 한 자로 도 There is not a single pen that can be used.

장. 오늘은 책 몇 장 썼
느냐. How many double pages
of the book have you
written to-day.

썩. 참외 한 썩 먹어라. Eat a piece of muskmelon.

KOREAN MONEY.

79.—As yet Koreans have only, what is known in the East as “cash” as a circulating medium. Around the capital the “five cash piece” and in the interior the old one cash piece are in use. The unit of currency, however is not the cash. Foreigners coming from China have taken this as the unit, and have thus made for themselves and others much confusion. The native unit is the 럡 (nyang) or one hundred cash, this is divided into ten 돈 (tone) which is again divided into ten 쵸 (pöon) or 립 (nip). This last stands simply for “one piece” (of money) and 쵸 may as a consequence, referring to the old cash, mean either simply “one cash” or referring to the cash of today, mean one five cash piece. In like manner 두쵸 may be either two, or ten cash, and 오쵸 may be either five or twenty-five cash. On account of this difficulty, it is quite customary today, when speaking of prices of small things which cost only a few cash, when the word 쵸 is used, if the “five cash piece” is meant to precede the price by the words 당오.

당오 한쵸, means five cash.

당오 두쵸, means ten cash.

It would be much simpler for both Koreans and themselves, if the foreigners would give up speaking of so many cash and take the “nyang” as the unit. It

is the unit of Korean money, and should be used as such. Ten **량** are spoken of as one **관** or **패** but the term is not much used.

We would then have Korean money as follows:

한푼.....	One cash.
오푼 or 당오 한푼.....	Five cash.
육푼.....	Six cash.
칠푼.....	Seven cash.
팔푼.....	Eight cash.
구푼.....	Nine cash.
한돈 or 당오 두푼.....	Ten cash or one tone.
두돈 or 당오 너푼.....	Twenty cash or two tone etc.
무돈오푼 or 당오 오푼	Twenty-five cash.
서돈 or 당오 육푼.....	Thirty cash.
너돈 or 당오 팔푼.....	Forty cash.
닷돈 or 당오 한돈.....	Fifty cash.
한량.....	One hundred cash or one nyang.
한량 닷돈 } or 한량 반 }	{ One hundred and fifty cash. or One nyang and fifty cash or one nyang and a half.
두량.....	{ Two hundred cash or two nyang.
석량.....	{ Three hundred cash or three nyang.
억량.....	{ Four hundred cash or four nyang.
닷량.....	{ Five hundred cash or five nyang.
열량.....	{ One thousand cash or ten nyang.
백량.....	{ Ten thousand cash or one hundred nyang.

천량	{ One hundred thousand cash or one thousand nyang.
오천량	{ Five hundred thousand cash or five thousand nyang.
만량	{ One million cash or ten thousand nyang.

80.—Since the advent of foreigners, the yen and Mexian dollar have come into constant use, and, in and around the Japanese quarter, (but scarcely anywhere else), Japanese coins of smaller denominations are in circulation. For all of these, various terms have been introduced. The dollar is 일원 and in speaking of the silver dollar, we use the term 은전, and of the paper dollar the terms 지전. Korean terms have been adapted to designate the various parts of a dollar and to distinguish them from the Korean money, it is common unless one is speaking to a Japanese to prefix the amount with the words “Japanese money.” The term 량 (nyang) has been adopted to designate ten cents, and 돈 (tone) its tenth to designate one cent, 일본 돈 혼량 닷돈 means then fifteen cents and 일본 돈 열량 one dollar. Etc.

This nomenclature has been introduced by the Japanese, and is largely in use, not merely in Seoul but in Chemulpo, Fusan and other ports ; but whether when the Koreans adopt a new currency these terms will be used or not, remains to be seen.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

81.—Just as there are two sets of cardinal, so there are two sets of ordinal numbers. They are formed from the pure Korean by affixing 재 to the substantive

form. In the case of “the first,” generally the term 첫 replaces 하나. They are formed from the Sinico-Korean by affixing the term 데. From one to one hundred then, they are as follows :—

KOREAN.	SINICO-KOREAN.	
첫재	데 일	First.
둘재	데 이	Second.
셋재	데 삼	Third.
넷재	데 스	Fourth.
다섯재	데 오	Fifth.
여섯재	데 른	Sixth.
일곱재	데 칠	Seventh.
여덟재	데 팔	Eighth.
아홉재	데 구	Ninth.
열재	데 십	Tenth.
열한재	데 십 일	Eleventh.
열둘재	데 십 이	Twelfth.
스물재	데 이십	Twentieth.
스물한재	데 이십 일	Twenty first.
스물둘재	데 이십 이	Twenty second.
설한재	데 삼십	Thirtieth.
마한재	데 스십	Fortieth.
쉰재	데 오십	Fiftieth.
예순재	데 른십	Sixtieth.
일흔재	데 칠십	Seventieth.
여든재	데 팔십	Eightieth.
아흔재	데 구십	Ninetieth.
백재	데 백	One hundredth.

TIMES AND SEASONS.

82.—The Koreans do not make a distinction between the terms month and moon, their calendar month

being a lunar month, they are co-ordinate. They designate them, then, as the “first moon,” “second moon,” etc., using Sinico-Korean terms: and every third year adding a thirteenth month, which they call 윤돌, or 윤월, which is variously interspersed, their calendar corresponding with the Chinese. The names of the months are:—

정월.....	The first moon.
이월.....	The second moon.
삼월.....	The third moon.
사월.....	The fourth moon.
오월.....	The fifth moon.
육월.....	The sixth moon.
칠월.....	The seventh moon.
팔월.....	The eighth moon.
구월.....	The ninth moon.
십월.....	The tenth moon.
십일월 or 동지돌	The eleventh moon.
십이월 or 섣달	The twelfth moon.
윤월 or 윤돌	{ The extra month in the Korean leap-year.

Note.—As will be seen, pure Korean terms may be used for the eleventh, twelfth, or leap months.

83.—Their months vary in length from twenty-nine to thirty days, and are designated respectively from their size 작은 돌 or 소월 (*little moon*) and 큰 돌 or 대월 (*big moon*).

In naming their days, either series of numerals may be used, but of course with the corresponding term for day. The pure Korean terms have undergone certain contractions and modifications, as can be seen from the table below. In speaking of the day of the

month from the first to the tenth, the term 초, is prefixed and we speak of the “first first” the “first second” the “first third,” etc. This arises from the fact that when they speak of those above ten or twenty, it is not necessary to prefix the ten or the twenty. Koreans suppose that most people will know whether they are in the first, second or third ten days. If then it is the seventh, seventeenth or twenty-seventh, and they are asked what day of the month it is, it is perfectly proper, and in fact customary for them simply to reply “The seventh.” If, even then, it is not certain what day of the month it is, the inquirer would again ask “Which seventh?” and the reply would be, “The first seventh,” “the seventeenth,” “or the twenty seventh” as the case might be. This practice is not universal, but quite common and follows out the Korean custom of using as few words as possible. We have then the following as the days of the month.

KOREAN.

SINICO-KOREAN.

초하로.....	초일일.....	The first.
초이틀 or 외흘,	초이일.....	, second.
초사흘.....	초삼일.....	, third.
초나흘.....	초사일.....	, fourth.
초닷식.....	초오일.....	, fifth.
초엿식.....	초륙일.....	, sixth.
초닐해.....	초칠일.....	, seventh.
초여드림.....	초팔일.....	, eighth.
초아흐림.....	초구일.....	, ninth.
초열흘.....	초십일.....	, tenth.
열하로.....	십일일.....	, eleventh.

보름	십오일	The fifteenth.
스무날	이십일	, twentieth.
스무하로	이십일일	, twenty-first.
스무이를	이십이일	, twenty-second.
금음	삼십일	, last day of the month.

84.—If we drop off the 초, which precedes the first ten of the above days of the month ; the names of the days may also be used to express duration of time : and 하로, or 일일, may mean either *one day* or *the first day* ; 열흘, or 십일, may mean *ten days* or *the tenth day* ; 보름, or 십오일, *fifteen days* or *the fifteenth day*.

Often when used this way, they will affix such words as 간, 동안, meaning *space, duration*. 금음, meaning *the last day* of the month, cannot of course be used in this way.

85.—Koreans divide their day into twelve, instead of twenty four hours ; and, in speaking of the hour, they do not as we do, refer to the end of the hour, but to the whole time covered by it. Thus 오시, which is the Korean hour which comes in the middle of the day, and corresponds to our time from eleven A.M. to one P.M., means neither, eleven, twelve, nor one o'clock, but the whole time from eleven to one. To say then, that you will meet a person at 오시, or noon, is extremely indefinite. If one desires to be more definite the terms 초 “the beginning,” 중 “the middle,” and 말 or 끝 “the end” may be used : 오시초, will then be *a little past eleven*, 오시 중, *about twelve*, and 오시말, *a little before one*.

The times of the night are known throughout the country, by the five watches ; the beginning of which are

signalized at each magistracy, either by drum beating or horn blowing. In the farming sections, where sundials and anything resembling a time-piece is unknown, such primitive terms as “sunrise” and “sunset,” “when the sun is high in the east” or “low in the west,” the “first” and “second cock-crowing,” are used to mark the time. The introduction of foreign time-pieces, however, is changing all this; and the foreign hours are marked by the use of the adjectival numerals, either pure or Sinico-Korean, with the word 시 (*time, or hour*). It should be noted that while the Sinico-Korean numerals may be used; the pure Korean are more commonly heard. The minutes are represented by the word 분 together with generally the Sinico-Korean numerals; but either may be used. In speaking of the time then, the hour preceded by its numeral comes first, and then the minute preceded by its numeral.

As :—

열시 or 십시	Ten o'clock.
열두시 or 십이시	Twelve o'clock.
다섯시 오분	Five minutes past five.
여섯시 십오분	A quarter past six.
일곱시반	Half past seven.
or 일곱시 스십오분 } 여덟시 십오분 덜 }	..... A quarter to eight.

The difference between “A.M.” and “P.M.” can only be marked by such words as, “before noon” and “afternoon,” “morning” and “evening.”

FRACTIONS AND MULTIPLES.

86.—Fractional numbers are not used by Koreans to the same extent as by foreigners. We find such words as

반 and 절반 to express *half*, and 반반 or “half, half,” to express *a quarter*. Other fractions may be expressed by the use of 분 “a part,” which being Sinico-Korean, generally requires corresponding numerals.

삼 분 지 일	{ “three part-of, one” or “of three parts, one” }	=One third.
소 분 지 일,	“Four part-of, one”	=One fourth.
오 분 지 삼,	“Five part-of, three”	=Three fifths.
십 분 지 육,	“Ten part-of, six”	=Six tenths.

These same quantities may be expressed by the use of Pure-Korean numerals; but if such is done, the post-position must be used, and the result is clumsy and awkward. We would then have:—

세 분 에 두 분	“Three part-in two part”	=two thirds.
다섯 분 에 네 분	“Five part-in four part”	=four fifths,
두 분 에 한 분	“Two part-in one part”	=one half.

87.—Various words such as, 갑, 동갑, 갑절, 곱, 곱절, 배, etc., hold the place of multiples in Korean, and are affixed to the various numerals. 배, being Sinico-Korean, must be used with the corresponding numerals; the others, for the most part, being restricted to pure Korean numerals; 동갑, 갑절 and 곱절, may be used independently, without any numeral, and have then the sense of *double*.

The following examples will illustrate the use of these words:—

이 보다 삼 배 가져 오너라.	Bring three times as much as this.
갑시 갑절 되엿소.	The price is twice as much.

이 거시 그것 보다 크기 This is twice as large as
동갑 이오. that.

어제 가져온 거슨 오늘 What you brought yester-
열곱 이오. day was ten times what
you have today.

88.—Interest on money is, for the most part, reckoned per month ; and the rate is expressed by so many cash per *nyang*, though the word *nyang* is universally left to be understood. The word **변** (*interest*) is affixed to the amount and, **흔쑤변**, means *one cash interest* or “one cash per hundred” and equals *one per cent*. Interest at less than one per cent is seldom spoken of in Korea, and when it is, the term **리** (equivalent to one tenth of a **쑤** or cash) is used. We have then the following :—

흔리변 or **일리변** $\frac{1}{10}$ %.

오리변 $\frac{5}{10}$ % or $\frac{1}{2}$ %.

흔쑤변 or **일쑤변** 1 %.

흔돈변 or **대돈변** 10 %.

89.—The Korean word **번**, which has by some been termed a multiple, has the sense of the English word *time* or *times* ; and is affixed to numerals of either kind. Then **세번** or **삼번** means three times ; **네번** or **사번**, four times, etc. To these may be added the particle **재**, which gives an ordinal sense ; and **세번째** becomes “the third time ;” **네번째**, “the fourth time ;” **다섯번째**, the fifth time. While this **재** may at times be affixed to **번**, when accompanied by Sinico-Korean numerals, it is not common and is considered inelegant.

WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

90.—To the student of Korean, a knowledge of all the weights and measures used in Korea is unnecessary ; but a few words concerning those most commonly used may be of service. The one main difficulty everywhere is, that there is no one authorized and regularly acknowledged standard.

In measures of small length, carpentering, etc., the 자 or what we might call *foot*, is the unit ; but the 목척 or carpenter's 자, varies considerably from that used to measure cotton goods ; and this again from that used in measuring silks, satins, etc. Whatever the 자 used, one tenth will be one 치 or *inch*, which is again divided into ten 분 ; the 치 and 분 varying of course with the 자. The 목척 exactly equals the English foot of twelve inches. The 자 used in measuring cloth goods, varies from eighteen to twenty-two inches, but the usual length is about twenty inches. In measuring cord, wire and the like, the 발 (*fathom* or *brace*), the distance from hand to hand with arms outstretched ; in measuring depths, the 길 (*man's height*) ; and in measuring small lengths, quite frequently, the �뎀 (*span*), the distance from thumb to middle finger, are used.

The measure of distance, or 리, has been said to be about one third of a mile, but the 리 itself varies so much in different localities, that no definite comparison can be made. It is short among the mountains and long on the plains ; and it has been aptly remarked that the Korean 리 is hardly a measure of distance, but should rather be called a measure of the time taken to travel the distance ; as, in ordinary Korean travelling with coolies

and pack ponies, it averages an hour for every ten 리 whether they be long or short.

91.—The Korean weights, being the same as the Chinese, the 근 or catty, is about one and one third English pounds. It is divided into sixteen 량 (nyang), or ounces, which are again divided into ten 돈, the 돈 into ten 쪼, the 쪼 into ten 리.

In the measuring of grain still greater confusion exists. The system used in the country districts differs entirely from that used in Seoul. The measures used in the country are as follows:—

Ten 勺 = one 홑 or about one handful.

Ten 홑 = one 되.

Ten 되 = one 말.

Twenty 말 = one 섬 or 석 or one bag.

Note.—The勺 is only used in computing government taxes.

The measures used in Seoul differ largely from these.

It takes three of the above 되 and a little more, to make one 화인 되.

Ten 화인 되, (commonly spoken of as ten 되) = one 말.

Four 말 = one 섬 or bag.

This latter 말, contains about one and a half pecks.

In remembering these measures, it must be borne in mind, that the *unit* varies with each province; but the *ratio* remains the same throughout.

Land is measured either by the amount of grain taken to sow it, (and from the above we get the measures 섬 적 이, 마 적 이, 되 적 이): or, as in some parts of the United States, by the number of days it will take to plough it.

92.—In closing this chapter on numerals, we would notice a peculiar use of the adjectival numeral ㅎ. It is often placed before other numerals, or nouns signifying quantity, distance, amount, etc., to give an indefinite sense; and may then be translated by the English word “*about*.” 즈음, placed after the numeral, has also this same effect and may often be used in conjunction with ㅎ, following the numeral or quantity which ㅎ precedes.

Ex.:—

그 집이 ㅎ 륵십 간 되오. That house contains about
sixty kan.

나히 ㅎ 오십 즈음 된 듯 His age is somewhere
about fifty.

Note.—In the Chapter on nouns, as well as elsewhere, attention was called to the fact, that the plural ending 들, like the postpositions, was only to be used when its absence would cause ambiguity. We would here remind the student, that when numerals are used, (according to the rule then given) unless special emphasis is desired, 들 should not be used. Let him then when talking Korean, not speak of five houses but *five house*, etc.

CHAPTER VI.

THE POSTPOSITION.

93.—There is a large class of words, which are affixed to nouns, and show their relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Some of these have arbitrarily been taken and made to stand as case inflections or parts of the noun. For such an arbitrary selection, there can be no authority. If some are case inflections all should be taken as such. Such a method would, however, complicate matters greatly, and it is far more simple to consider all these, as separate words or postpositions. Most of them were originally nouns or parts of nouns; this, however, is not the place to enter upon a study of derivations and the original meanings of words, since we are neither making a language nor trying to force one that exists at present to conform to ancient and now obsolete rules, but taking a language as we find it today, and trying to systematize it and show who it is used. In this connection, it may be well to note that certain compound postpositions, and other words, have in the course of time, undergone changes; and the form of the original simple postposition, from which it was compounded, has been lost. Some have

95.—Before we speak of all the various postpositions and their uses, it may be well to mention a few of the rules governing the euphonic changes that these particles undergo, in uniting with the nouns.

Nouns ending with ㅁ or ㄴ generally interpose an ㄴ before the postposition: A few nouns in ㄴ may interpose ㄹ, but when this is done, it will be generally found that there are two forms, and that either the form in ㄴ or ㄹ can equally well be used.

Note.—We are pretty safe in saying that this difference between 시 and 치, arises from what was originally a difference in the final letter of the word. No word can end in ㄷ; no word ending in ㄴ is pronounced as though it were a ㄴ; consequently the distinction between words ending in ㄴ and ㄷ, was lost. It re-appears, however, when a postposition, beginning with a vowel is affixed. For example **갓** (*hat*) pronounced now *kat*, was evidently originally pronounced with the sound of *s*. **밭** (*field*) on the other hand evidently ended originally in ㄷ, which being unable to stand at the end of a word became ㄴ. When the postposition is added, however, the old difference of sound re-appears, and we have **갓시** for *hat* with the nominative ending; and **밭치** for *field*.

The Korean does not like to have the vowel ㅜ (eu) in a syllable preceded by ㄴ, ㄹ, or ㄷ; consequently in all such places, this letter is replaced by ㅗ (“lower a”). In a few cases of nouns ending in vowels, and some ending in ㅁ, the letter ㅎ is interposed and becomes the initial letter of the postposition. In many cases of nouns ending in vowels, contractions occur; but for the most part, these are not allowable in writing.

96.—이, 가, 석석. These three postpositions are all signs of the Nominative case, but (like all postpositions, as has been said before) are only used when the sense requires it.

이 may be joined to any noun ; and, according to the rules given above, may become 시, 처, or 히. When preceded by a vowel the initial ㅇ may be dropped, and, without any initial vowel, it may be placed below its noun.

가 can only be used with nouns ending in vowels. With such, the postposition 가 is more commonly used than 이, though the latter may always be used.

씩씩 is an honorific, and is commonly used, for the Nominative case. At times, it is used to represent other cases ; but such a practice is wrong and should be avoided.

어제 보낸 사름이 다 왔소. All the men you sent yesterday have come.

갓시 대단이 비싸요. The hats are terribly dear.

조선에 호랑이가 만소. Tigers are plentiful in Korea.

님금 씩씩 오늘 거동하오. The King goes out today.

97.—The postposition 이 has also another use : it is added to Relative Participles in the sense of—*the man who, he who*. Used in this sense, it is probably derived from 인, the ㅂ having been elided; and when so used, it can be followed by any one of the other postpositions.

어제 온이. He who came yesterday.

98.—의. This postposition means *of*, and denotes the Possessive case. According to the rules given above this may become 히, or 시, or, when preceded by a vowel, a contraction may occur. While, for the most part, any such contractions would not be allowable in

writing, in certain words, prominent among which are the personal and interrogative pronouns, they are both allowable and common.

내 책 왔소.

My books have come.

오늘은 임금의 탄일이오.

Today is the King's birthday.

그 옷시 빛출 슬히여 호오.

I don't like the color of these clothes.

99.—의게, 안테, 데려, 씌. These four all mean—to, from, at, unto, etc., and denote the Dative case. 의게 may become 히게, 식게, and at times, simply 게. This last, although quite common in speaking, with a few exceptions, is not allowable in writing. 의게 can be replaced by 안테 or 데려, which have exactly the same effect, or 씌 which is honorific. While these words originally meant to, unto, at, they are also used with verbs of receiving, in the sense of *at the hand of*, or *from*.

이책 리석방 의게 주어라.

Give this book to Mr. Yi.

박석방 안테 내가 은전 십원 받았소.

I received ten dollars from Mr. Pak.

글 값고 시분이 의게 책이 긴호오.

Books are valuable to one who wants to read.

민 관석 의게 하인이 대단이 만소.

There are a great many servants at Min Pansa's.

With Passives and Intransitives, 의게 and 안테 often corresponds to the English word *by*.

포고 안테 잡혔소.

They were arrested by the police.

도적놈에게 죽었소. He was killed by robbers.
(Here the Koreans use the intransitive, *he died*).

그 사람한테 속었소. I was cheated by that man.

100.—을 is the sign of the Accusative case. It may become according to the rules given above 홀 or 술, etc. After nouns ending in a vowel, it commonly becomes 를. In many places where we would suppose it necessary, it is omitted: and its presence in a sentence where it is not really needed, has the effect of the definite article.

그 사람이 제 개를 죽었소. That man killed his dog.

의원이 약을 주었소. The doctor gave the medicine.

Sometimes this postposition may also be translated by the English, *for, about, of, to*.

그 사람을 다섯 시를 기다렸소. I waited five hours for him.

책은 그 사람을 주어라. As for the book! give it to that man.

공이 어제 말 하던 것을 말 하었소. We were talking about what you told us yesterday.

꼭 시방 공을 말 하었소. We were speaking of you just now.

101.—에 The original sense of 에 is *in, into, to, at*, and it may consequently many times be used for 의게. It may be changed for euphony into 헤 or 시.

The distinction between 에 and 의게, is, while not always rigidly adhered to, that 의게 cannot be used of any but animate objects. Thus you would not say 책 의게 두어라; but 책에두어라 (*Put it in the book*); you

would not say 집 의 게 가 거 라 but 집 에 가 거 라; (*Go home*). Properly, 에 should only be used with inanimate objects.

내 가 락 지 강 에 빠 졌 소. My ring fell into the river.

공 의 동 님 에 미 국 사 례
사 뇨 이 가 있 습 니 디 가. Do any Americans live in
your neighborhood?

책 에 있 소. It is in the book.

그 거 시 집 에 만 소. There is plenty of that at
home.

궤 에 너 히 라. Put them into the box.

이 오리 를 쥬 방 에 보 게
여 라. Send this duck to the
kitchen.

With intransitive and passive verbs, at times 에 corresponds to the English words *by* or *with*.

칼 에 죽 었 소. He was killed with a knife.

불 에 톳 소. It was burnt by fire.

Note—The distinction made in the use on the one hand of 에, 의 게 or 안 데; and on the other hand of 로; with the Passive or Intran. verb is not always adhered to.

Where the instrument is considered as the instrument in the hands of some one else, 로 may be used; but when it is considered as the agent accomplishing the result 에 or 의 게 must be used.

On this account we cannot say—로 고 로 잡 혔 소; but as seen above we must say—로 고 의 게 잡 혔 소 (he was arrested by the police).

Of course the distinction between 에 and 의 게 mentioned above is maintained here also.

102.—로 This postposition has the sense of—*by, with, by means of, for*. It generally denotes that by which anything is accomplished—the instrument used.

When joined to a vowel ending with a consonant, it becomes 으 로. This, again, according to the rules given

above, may become **호로**, **소로**, or **초로**. When preceded by the consonant **ㄱ**, there is no need for the interposition of the vowel: **로** becomes **노**, and the **ㄱ** and **ㄴ** coming together have the sound of *double l*.

칼 노 버혀라.	Cut it with a knife.
노끈 으로 묶여라.	Fasten it with a string.
이것 조선 말 노 무어시 라고 호요.	What is this called in Korean?
산골 길 노 왔소.	We came by the mountain road.
공은 송석방 으로 알았소.	I took you for Mr. Song.

This postposition has also the sense of *to*, and *from*. From its meaning as the instrument, it comes to mean the place *from which* one begins, or *by which* one ends a journey.

평양 으로 와서 공쥬로 가오.	I came from Pyeng Yang and am going to Kong Ju.
---------------------	---

Note.—From this use of this postposition ambiguity may arise, and **송도로 갔소** may mean either that he ends his journey at Song Do, and has gone there; or that on his way to some other place, he has gone *via* Song Do.

103.—**야** This postposition was probably originally derived from **와** but has now lost its original meaning, and is used as an exclamatory particle, representing what may be termed the “Vocative Case.” From the very nature of the case, it is not as commonly used as many of the other postpositions. It may at times become **ㅏ**, and generally does so when following a vowel, and of course like the other postpositions becomes **ㅓ** or **하**, and at times, though very rarely **어**.

104.—에^ㅅㅅ. This postposition is properly a contraction of 에 and the verbal participle ^ㅅ잇^ㅅ from ^ㅅ잇^ㅅ소 (to be); and has the sense of—*being at*, or, *having been at*. From this, then, we get the meanings in English, of—*from*, *since*, *at*; referring to the time or place *at which*, or *from which* anything takes place. Euphonicly it may change to ^ㅅ헤^ㅅㅅ or ^ㅅ시^ㅅㅅ, and quite often when preceded by a vowel is contracted to simple ^ㅅㅅ. It has generally been regarded as the sign of the Ablative case

미국 ^ㅅ ㅅ 궤 ^ㅅ 왔 ^ㅅ 소.	A box came from America.
외 ^ㅅ 아 ^ㅅ 문 ^ㅅ 에 ^ㅅ ㅅ ^ㅅ 맞 ^ㅅ 났 ^ㅅ 소.	I met him at the Foreign Office.
여 ^ㅅ 기 ^ㅅ ㅅ ^ㅅ 송 ^ㅅ 도 ^ㅅ 가 ^ㅅ 몇 ^ㅅ 리 ^ㅅ 오.	How far is it from here to Song Do.

105.—은. This postposition has been generally classified as the sign of the Oppositive case; because of its constant use in contrasts. It has the effect of emphasizing the word to which it is joined, and may be translated into English by the words—*as for*, *as far as*, *with regard to*. In many places where in English the contrast of the words, or the emphasis desired to be given is sufficiently plain without these words, in Korean this postposition will often be used. For instance, with the indefinite pronominal adjective ^ㅅ더^ㅅ러 (some), in English we consider the repetition of the word sufficient emphasis, and, while this is allowable in Korean, the two words each with the postposition would be preferable.

Following a vowel, this becomes ^ㅅ은, and according to the rules given at the beginning of this chapter, it may also become ^ㅅ흔, or ^ㅅ은, or ^ㅅ춘.

- 내가 시방은 아조 낫소. Now I am quite well.
(I have been sick).
- 이 름금은 락우 낫소. These apples are much
nicer.
- 공의 편지 논 쓰겟소. With regard to your letter
it will do.
- 꽃춘 리월에 쓰겟소. As far as the flowers are
concerned next month
will do.

This same postposition may be added also to verbal participles, when it has a conditional effect ; and may be used either of the present or future. Sometimes its effect is simply temporal.

- 눈이 밝아 석논 칙 잘 보았소. When my eyesight was
good, I could read books
easily.
(Lit. Eyes having been clear as far
as, books well I read).
- 물에 빠자 석논 죽겟소. If you were to fall into the
water, you would drown.
(Lit. Water in, having fallen, as for,
will die).
- 이것 아니 먹으면 죽겟소. If you don't take this, you
will die.
(Lit. This thing not having eaten,
as for, will die).

This postposition may also be, and is quite frequently, added to other postpositions. It emphasizes thereby, not the postposition, but the word to which that postposition is joined.

106.—브러. The postposition 브러 has the sense of *from*, *since*, and refers to either time or place. In many

cases, it takes the place of **에**. It may be written **브럼**.

Note.—This word will often be found written with a **ㅍ** instead of **ㅂ** but the best authorities write **브러**, and **부러** is seldom met with to-day.

오늘 브러 일 잘 하리라. From to-day on, do your work well.

그저녁 브러 조금도 아니 먹었소. I have not eaten a morsel since the day before yesterday.

공이 갈 때 브러 점점 더쳐 갔소. He has been getting worse from the time you left.

황주 브러 중화 석지 존 흙 뿐 잊었소. From Hwangju to Chungwha there was nothing but mud.

107.—**석지** is the opposite of **브더** and means, *up to, as far as, to*.

내가 열 량 석지 보아도 아니 받았소. I offered, up to a thousand cash, but he would not take it.

오리골 석지 가서 만났소. We went as far as Oricole, and met them there.

물이 물 가슴 석지 왔소. The water came up to the horse's chest.

In a few cases, but rarely, this word is found written **석중** but it is not elegant and should not be imitated.

108.—**야**. This postposition has heretofore been overlooked as such. It may be joined to nouns, adverbs and is largely found added to verbal participles. It is exclusive in its use and has the sense of,—*only, merely*.

With a verbal participle, and followed by the future of **항오** and **쓰오** it has the effect of the English word *must*. Followed by the future of any other verb it has the effect of stating what *must* be done in order to accomplish the act, or bring about the state expressed in the principal verb.

대포가 잇시니 활이야 As there are cannon is
쏘디 잇노냐. there any use in mere
bows?

그 사람이 벌써 죽었 Since that man has been
시니 약 가져와 야 쏘디 dead for some time, the
업소. mere bringing of medi-
cine is useless.

그런 거슨 대궐 에야 잇 Such as that can only be
겟소. found in the Palace.

배 리야 바다를 건너 One must have a boat to
겟소. cross the sea.

사람이 먹어야 살겟소. Man must eat to live.

일 항여야 삭을 밧겟소. You must work, to receive
wages.

토희가 잇셔야 글시를 쓰 I must have paper to write
겟소. on.

목슈가 외야 일을 혼가 If we are to work together,
지로 항겟소. the carpenter must come.

리월에 내가 함흥 가야 I must go to Ham Eung
쓰 겟소. next month.

109.—나. This word is properly a conjunction, but in many cases it takes the place of a postposition. It may be written **이나** and corresponds to the English “*or*,” “*either*.” Repeated it is “*either...or*.” Used

alone as a postposition joined to a noun, it has the sense of, *at least*. Joined to verbs it has a concessive force. In this place, however, we have but to deal with it as a postposition meaning, *at least, even*.

나 나 가겠소. I at least will go.

이 거시나 쓰겠소. Even this will do.

가. This word, also, can hardly be called a postposition as it is not added to nouns. It is joined to almost any verbal form, and asks a question. It is not used so much in asking questions of another, as in soliloquies where one is in doubt or in hesitation.

내가 가가. Shall I go?

가져 가 리잇가. Shall I take it away?

오늘 비 올가. Will it rain to-day?

도 가. Is it good?

약 먹으면 병 나홀가. If I take the medicine will I get better?

먹을가 말가. Shall I eat it or not?

110.—In many cases one or more postpositions may be combined, just as in English we use one or more prepositions.

In these cases, for the most part, the effect of all the postpositions is manifest.

The following sentences will illustrate this :—

그 사람의 지조 로는 못 하겠소. I can't do it with such skill as that man shows.

이 책 에서는 못 본 말 이오. That's something I have not seen in this book.

넘금 석석 은 덕우 착 하오. As far as the king is concerned, he is a good man.

일본 으로서 왔소.	He came from Japan.
리석방 의게로 보내여라.	Send it to Mr. Yi.
님금 석를 가기가 조심 스럽소.	It is well worthy of taking great care, in paying a visit to the king.

COMPOSITE POSTPOSITIONS.

111.—The composite postpositions are nouns to which are affixed simple postpositions, and which are now in turn affixed to other nouns in a sentence and hold the same place as simple postpositions. A few of them are given below. It will be noticed that in some cases the simple postposition has slightly changed its form.

안회,	Inside of, inside.	아래에, or 아래,	} Lower part of, below.
밖기,	{ Outside of, out- side.	이편에,	
우회,	{ On the top of, above.	더편에,	{ This side of, on this side.
밋회,	{ Below, under- neath.	대신에,	{ That side of, on that side.
곁회, } 옆회, }	At the side of, beside.	대신으로,	} Instead of, in place of.
뒤회,	Behind.	속에,	
앞회,	{ Front of, in front.	것회,	{ Outside of, out- side.
책문에,	On account of.	후에,	After.
사족으로, } 연고로, }	Because of.	전에,	Before.
		끝회,	At the end of.
		가회,	At the side of.

112.—In the use of these composite postpositions, originally the simple postposition 의 was placed after the noun before the composite postposition ; but this is no longer done except in a few very rare instances, the composite postposition directly governing the noun.

집 앞 회,	{ In front of the house.	그 사람,	{ “ On account of that man.”
제 속에,	Inside the box.	뜻 밖 과,	{ Outside of thought, unexpectedly.
상 위 회,	On the table.	너 대신 에,	Instead of you.
제 밑 회,	{ Beneath the box.	길 이 편 에,	{ “ On this side of the road.

VERBAL POSTPOSITIONS.

113.—There are a number of verbal participles that are now used as postpositions. They can follow a noun, or at times are preceded by a simple postposition. When met with, they can generally be recognized in a moment, but a few are given below as examples.

위 향 야, “ In behalf of,” “ For the sake of.”

인 향 야, “ Because of,” “ On account of.”

넘 어, “ Having gone over,” beyond.

건 너, “ Having crossed,” across.



CHAPTER VII.

THE VERB.

114.—It has been said, and that rightly, that the verb presents the greatest difficulty which the student has to meet in the study of Korean. This difficulty arises not so much from the great variety of forms to express time and mood, through which the verb may be carried : as from the number of nouns, adverbs, conjunctions etc., which may be joined to it, slightly changing its meaning, or from the way in which any verb can play into almost any other. Heretofore no adequate classification of these various words and forms has been attempted. They have been joined to the verb, and most of them classed under the general head of terminations. Admitting as all those in the verb form do, of being put in turn through a complete conjugation, the whole subject has presented to the student, an almost impassable barrier. If, however, we can take these various forms, separate them into their elements, and show rules by which they are joined ; matters will be greatly simplified.

An attempt to do this has been made in the following pages, and while the writer realizes how inade-

quately this has been done, he trusts that the classification aimed at and begun, will enable the student not only to carry it to its completion, but to gain a firm grasp of the verb in all its forms.

115.—One thing to be remembered in connection with the Korean verb is its absolute impersonality, and its entire lack of number. This was hinted at, while speaking of the Korean personal pronoun. The same form is used for first, second, or third person, singular or plural, and, as has been said before, these distinctions are left to the context.

116.—There are a few forms which from the very nature of the case, can only belong to one or other of the persons. In such cases, however, the person is expressed rather in the *sense* of the verb than in its form. For example, in the expression for direct command, one does not “command” one’s self, nor can the “command” be said to be in the third person, it can only be in the second.

As :— 어석 가거라.
(Go *quickly*).

Here of course this can only be in the second person ; and as in English, it may be addressed to one or more. If one is desirous of showing that the direction is addressed to more than one, it may be done by the insertion of the plural particle 들, immediately after the adverb, and we have.

어석 들 가거라.
(Go ‘(plur)’ *quickly*).

This last shows that the command is addressed to more than one.

117.—Again in what we have termed *Volitive mood*, *first person*; the first person exists in the very meaning of the word. It is a proposition, that the speaker, together with the person or persons addressed, shall act. We can then but call it, “first person plural,” making it equivalent to the English “Let us.”

As :— 남산 올라 잡시다.

(*Let us go up Nam San*).

118.—There are also a few forms which have been said to designate, the first person, but these too, as was remarked above, get their *first person* rather from their sense, and may be termed forms of *assent*, or *compliance*.

Thus we have the termination 마, which is affixed to the stem of the verb giving it this sense.

Note.—Sometimes euphony requires that 으 shall be inserted between the stem and this ending.

Then, in reply to a request, in assenting, we have :—

그러면 가마.

(*Then I will go*).

or 만들마.

(*I will make it*).

We have also a first personal termination 노라, which may replace the termination of any one of the simple tenses, which can then only refer to the person speaking.

그 것 하노라, I am doing that.

„ „ 하겠 노라, I will do that.

„ „ 하였 노라, I did that.

With these exceptions, which in reality can scarcely be called such, we repeat ; “ There is no such thing as person and number in Korean verbs.”

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

119.—We divide Korean verbs into two classes, *Active* and *Neuter*, giving to these terms not the sense in which they are used by most grammarians, but that given in the “ *Grammaire Coreenne*.” All verbs that express *action*, whether the subject acts or is acted upon, whether the action does or does not terminate on some object, we call *active* verbs.

From the standpoint then of foreign grammarians, the Korean active verb may be either, active or passive, transitive or intransitive.

120.—Neuter verbs are those which predicate a quality of the subject, and have been termed by many, “ *Adjectival verbs*.” As will be seen further on, there are but few true adjectives in Korean, and even these few were originally nouns. For the most part when a quality is predicated of a noun, a verb is used ; and if the adjectival form is desired, the relative participle must be employed.

121.—It may be said that Korean verbs, have three distinct voices, *Active*, *Causative*, and *Passive*. From the very nature of the case, many verbs do not admit of all three voices, and in some we find but an *Active* and a *Causative*, in some simply an *Active* and a *Passive*, but in some again, all three. A large number of Korean active verbs have a passive sense as 奇生 (to be cheated) and these when put in the causative voice give us

naturally the equivalent of the English transitive verb. Such verbs admit of no passive voice, and although according to rule, they might be formed, from the nature of the case they are useless. Some neuter verbs on the other hand, forming a causative give us the effect of the English transitive verb. A passive of these causatives may be formed, but the Korean prefers to return to his neuter form. For example the neuter verb

 - 마르오 , To be dry.

becomes 물리오 , To make to be dry, or to dry.

The passive of this can be formed and we would then have

물리어오 , To be dried.

This last is perfectly correct according to rule, but it is not what the Korean would use. He would prefer to return to the neuter verb and say simply, "It is dry."

122.—The method of forming the passive and causative voices being so similar, among Koreans themselves there is much confusion in this matter. The causative voice may be formed by the addition of 이 , 오 , or 우 to the verbal stem. Causative verbs usually are formed from neuter or intransitive verbs, or even from those transitive verbs which may be used at times intransitively. The addition to the stem of the verb is of course much modified by the final letter of the stem. After vowels we commonly find the form in 오 or 우 , though the form in 이 is also quite frequent. After ㅁ or ㅂ ; ㅍ is often inserted, giving us 기 instead of 이 : after ㅈ , or a form in which there is a latent

aspirate ; 히 will be used. But these changes as will be seen at a glance are all euphonic, and to these rules there are many exceptions. A few of these causative forms are given below.

녹소, To melt (*v.i.*) 녹이오, To make to melt,
to melt (*v.t.*).

죽소, To die..... 죽이오, To kill.

우오 (*v.* 울) To cry..... 울니오, To make to cry.

지오, To carry..... 지우오, To load.

먹소, To eat..... 먹이오, To feed.

밝소, To be bright..... 밝히오, To make bright,
to lighten.

식소, To be cold..... 식히오, To cool.

높소, To be high..... 높히오, To elevate.

너르오, To be broad 넓니오, To broaden.

보오, To look 보이오, To show.

깨오, To awake 깨우오, To waken.

더웁소, To be hot 데오, To heat.

123.—All verbs do not admit of such a causative form, but a causative sense can always be given by the use of the future verbal participle with **할오**, which, however, often has the sense of *to force*, *to make*, *to oblige*, *to compel*, and is the stronger of the two.

가게 할오, To make him go.

오게 할오, To make him come.

곱게 할오, To make to be beautiful.

124.—The passive voice is formed by affixing **이** to the stem, and, as has been noted above, it may be affixed to the stem of either an active or causative verb. From the nature of the case the passive voice can only be formed from verbs having a transitive sense. For the most part, however, the Koreans

prefer not to use these forms, and as is noted in Part II on passive constructions, the English passive is generally rendered into Korean by a change of form. As was seen in ¶ 121, where there is an intransitive verb expressing the idea of the passive, it is preferred. The Korean verb “*to kill*” being the causative voice of their verb “*to die*,” in place of saying “he was killed,” which would be a passive of their causative voice, they would simply say, “he died;” and in expressing the agent “he died by” or “he died at the hands of.” A few passive forms are in constant and frequent use. Which these are, the student must learn from practice; but he will be always safe and much more in accordance with Korean usage, if he change the form and employ an active construction. The following are sufficient to illustrate.

닫소,	To shut.....	닫히오,	To be shut.
열오 (r. 열)	To open.....	열히오,	To be opened.
잡소,	To seize.....	잡히오,	To be seized.
막소,	To stop	막히오,	To be stopped.

THE CONJUGATION.

125.—It has been said, and rightly, that the Korean verb has but one conjugation, and in the formation of the various moods and tenses, there are certain regular and well defined governing laws; and these laws may in a sense be said to be the same throughout all the moods and tenses. What these laws are and how they are used, will be developed in the following paragraphs.

126.—Throughout what have been termed the various voices and forms of the verb, as, *active* and *passive*, *dubitative*, *desiderative* etc., we find these same rules

holding good, and a thorough acquaintance with what we have termed the "Basal Conjugation" and its various euphonic and other changes, will enable us to comprehend almost at a glance any other part. We shall enter, then, into a careful consideration of this conjugation.

THE BASAL CONJUGATION.

127.—This conjugation is the basis of all other forms. All other voices or forms of what have been termed various conjugations, no matter what they may be, are not only derived from some one or other part of the Basal Conjugation; but, after they have been so formed, they may in turn, be carried through all its various forms.

128.—Each part of the Basal Conjugation, except the participles, supine, and bases, may be divided into three parts. The *Stem*, the *Tense root* and the *Termination*.

Note.—The student should not confound this division with the division made with similar terms in the "Grammaire Coréenne." Their "sign of the time" did not include all that the "tense root" here does and in fact the "tense root" here given includes their "sign of the time" and part of their "termination." The "termination," as used here, differs entirely from theirs.

129.—The *stem* of the verb expresses simply what the action or state may be, and therefore generally remains the same throughout. It may be the stem of a simple verb, when it may also be called the *root*, it may be causative or passive, when it will have the causative or passive ending affixed. If the verb is one of the more complicated forms, such as desiderative, intentional, etc., the verbal stem may include more

than one word. It was just noted that the stem generally, remains the same. This was so put, because there is a class of verbs (and that not a small one) in which, in the present tense the stem undergoes a slight change, which holds also in the relative participles.

In 가오 (*to go*) the stem is 가.

„ 먹소 (*to eat*) „ „ „ 먹.

„ 여오 (*to be open*) the stem is 열.

„ 열니오 (*to be opened*) the stem is 열니.

And in 가져오라고 하오 (*to order to bring*), it is 가져오라고 하. In this last example, we have first 가져 the past verbal participle of the verb 가지오 (*to take*) ; 오 the stem of the verb 오오 (*to come*) ; 라 the contraction of the imperative ending, showing that it was an order ; 고 the conjunction uniting it to 하오 and used commonly in indirect discourse ; and 하오, with the sense here of *to say*. Dropping then the termination 오 we have the stem of the verb, *to order to bring*, and this may in turn be carried through the whole Basal Conjugation.

129.—The Tense Root, shows the time of the action, whether past, present, future, perfect or imperfect or even continued action. For the most part, when no tense root is expressed, the present is understood but with Korean active verbs, we oftentimes find 는 acting as a present tense root. In the indicative, however, except in the form used to inferiors, no present tense root is used.

130.—To express past time, we have the tense root 었 or 었, and quite frequently 았. Whether the compound or simple vowel should be used is entirely a matter of euphony, and it seems as though the

distinction between **ㅏ** and **ㅑ** depended also on the same cause. It has been suggested that, on account of this difference in past tense, we classify the Korean verb as having two conjugations, the one forming its past in **ㅏ**, the other in **ㅑ**. This may be advisable, but when the difference exists simply in the tensal root of the past, and in the past verbal participles, and as it can be accounted for on the score of euphony, it hardly seems necessary. The past tense in this matter follows the lead of the verbal participle, and it will be noticed, that nearly all verbs the ultima of whose stem has the sound of **ㅏ** or **ㅑ**, take their past tense root in **ㅗ** while nearly all others take it in **ㅛ**. It will also be seen that euphony goes still further, and where the ultima of the stem requires it, we shall find a consonant prefixed to the tense root. Stems ending in **ㄹ**, generally prefix **ㅍ**, those ending in **ㅈ** or containing a latent aspirate, prefix **ㅊ**, and at times we find a final vowel uniting with the tense root.

131.—The future tense root **ㄱ** is the simplest of all, and except in the case of verbs whose stems contain a latent aspirate, when it becomes **ㄱ**, it is always the same.

There is also another future tense root **ㄴ** though this is somewhat defective in its use with the various terminations.

Note.—The true distinction between **ㄱ** and **ㄴ** though not always adhered to, is that **ㄴ** signifies *purpose, intent*; while **ㄱ** is simple future.

These signify simple future time and are used where we would use the future. The future is at times, though rarely employed to render the English present

and such phrases as, 알겠소 and 모르겠소 need have in truth, no future significance ; but should be rendered into English by the present, *I know*, and *I do not know*. This use of the *future* for the *present*, is comparatively rare, but on the other hand the expression of a vivid future, by the simple present is quite common.

This future tense root is at times used together with the past tense root, giving us, as we might expect, a future past. When used in this way, the future follows the past tense root, which will be seen, is the reverse of the English method. The Korean says "I have will go," where we say "I will have gone."

132.—The particle **더** shows that the action signified by the verbal stem, was continuing or progressing, at the time shown by the tense root, and may be used alone, or with either the past or future tense root, or with both. When used alone, it signifies that the action was continuing or progressing, and can be used with either present or past time.

김석방 오늘 그 일 **하더** Mr. Kim is doing that to-day.
라.

김석방 어제 그 일 **하더** Mr. Kim was doing that
라. yesterday.

When used with either the future, perfect, or future-perfect tense root, this same progressive idea holds, and has the effect of taking the speaker and placing him in the time of the principal tense root. That is to say, if used with the past root, it causes the speaker to view the action not from the present as something done, but from the past, as something done

in the past, giving us then, almost the exact equivalent, of the English pluperfect. With the future tense root, on the other hand, the speaker is caused not to look at the action from the present, as something *to be done* in *the future*, but is projected forward into the future, and made to view the action as progressing then.

133.—We thus get, by the use of these various tense roots with the verbal stem, two classes of tenses which we have called “Simple” and “Compound.” The simple, are formed by the use of either no tense root, or the future, or past, or both ; giving us then as—

Simple Tenses.

Present.

Past.

Future.

Future Past.

The compound tenses, we have so named because they contain the two ideas of present, past, or future, together with that of progression. We have then, as—

Compound Tenses.

The Progressive (*present or past*).

„ Pluperfect.

„ Continued Future.

„ Probable Future Past.

134.—A few words on the use of these tenses :—

The **Present** represents action simply as in present time, whether continuing or not.

The **Past**, represents action as past, and may correspond to what is known in Latin grammars as “perfect indefinite” (simple past action) or

“perfect definite” (action completed) ; and thus corresponds to both the “past tense” and “present perfect tense” of later English grammars.

어제씨 석울 노 왓 소.

He came to Seoul yesterday.

아침 먹엇소.

He has eaten his breakfast.

The **Future tense** expresses what will take place in future time and corresponds to the simple English future. It is used also in many places where we would use such auxiliaries as “may,” “can.” At times if desired, an adverb to give the idea of ability, permission etc., may be used with the future, but this is rare, and the simple future is sufficient. Like so many other distinctions, these are left largely to the context, and it will be noticed, that the potential forms, hereafter to be mentioned in **수** and **만**, are in much more common use among foreigners than Koreans.

The **Future-past tense** may at times coincide with what in English we call the *future-perfect*, and at times with the *potential-past-perfect*. Perhaps the term “past-future” would have better designated it. It represents that an action will or should or would have been done at some time in the past. This tense should not then be confounded with the English *future perfect*, and where the English future perfect refers to an action that *will* be completed, at or before a certain time in the *future*, this tense cannot be used.

At such times, the simple future, with some adverb signifying *entirely*, *completely*, etc., must be employed. The Korean future past will be rendered by such

phrases as, "*He must have*," "*He will have*," "*He would have*," when such phrases are used with a present or past time, and refer to some action that is, or has been completed. We consequently often find this in the conclusion of a conditional clause.

어제 덩녕 왔겔소. "He certainly must have come yesterday."

이 썬에 왔겔소. "He will have come by this time."

의원 아니 왔더면 발셔 죽엇겔소. "If the doctor had not come, he would have died long ago."

발셔 업서젧겔소. "It must have been used up some time ago."

135.—To a certain extent, it will be seen that the compound tenses overlap the simple, and in many cases, as far as the foreigner is concerned, one or other of the simple tenses could be made to replace a compound tense. To the Korean, however, there is always a distinction, and the one cannot properly replace the other, therefore it should be the constant effort of the student to find out, when the one or the other should be used, and to use them accordingly. The following rules for the uses of the compound tenses while not complete in themselves will aid him in this.

The **Progressive tense** represents the action as incomplete, and progressing ; and may be either present or past. It is, however, more commonly used in the past tense, and is then exactly equivalent to the

imperfect tense of the Greek. With neuter verbs, it is almost restricted to this past tense, but even with these, it may be used in the present.

With active verbs; it may then be rendered into English, by the present participle, with the present or past of the verb “*to be*.” With neuter verbs, it may be rendered, by the simple present, or it would be better expressed by the use of the words “*continue to*” or if the past sense is intended, by the *simple past*. It is used for the most part, of what one has seen or experienced or known and is seldom employed in any but the third person.

일본에 동백이만터이다.

“*There were many camelias in Japan.*”

We might add to this sentence the words 지금 (*now*) and it would be—

“*There are now many camelias in Japan*” but it would signify that the speaker had just seen them.

일본은 농사 잘 흥더라.

“*As for the Japanese they farm well.*”

The speaker knows this for a fact.

아비는 게얼너도 아들은 보스런 흥더라.

“*Although the father is lazy, the son is energetic.*”

The **Pluperfect tense** represents the action or state, as completed or having existed, at or before, a certain past time, and is exactly equivalent to the English pluperfect, or past perfect tense.

어제 아침 해 편지 셋 썼더라.

“*I had written three letters by breakfast yesterday.*”

공의 편지 온 때에 화륜선 떠났더이다.

“*When your letter came the steamer had started.*”

비 시작 할때 씨 다 심었더라.

“*I had planted all the seeds when it began to rain.*”

The **Continued Future** as has been stated above, projects the speaker forward into the future, and causes him to view the action from that standpoint.

It refers then, to some action or state that will be in progress, or existing at some future time. It may be rendered into English by the use of the present participle with the future of the verb “to be,” or by the colloquial phrase “*going to.*”

엇더케 문득논지 보랴 하면 모레 문돌것더라.

“*If you want to see how he makes it, he will be making it the day after to-morrow.*”

리일 다 할것더라.

“*He is going to finish it to-morrow.*”

오늘은 아니 잡고 모레는 잡것 더이다.

“*He did not kill to-day; he will be killing the day after to-morrow.*”

What we have termed the **Probable Future Past**, we have thus named, because it has the sense of the future past, given above, but with simply the idea of strong probability. It would not be used of something that is known for a fact, and it represents possibility or contingency with respect to some past action which, it is implied, did not, or may not have occurred. It may be rendered into English by the present participle, with “*He must have been*” or “*He most probably was*” etc., etc.

늙어도 그림을 잘 그리니 젊어서는 유명한 화공
 잊엇것더라.

*“ Since in spite of his extreme age he draws so well, when
 young he was most probably a famous draughtsman.”*

술 집에서 나왔으니 술 다시 먹엇것더라.

*“ As he has just come out of a wine shop, he must
 have been drinking again.”*

어제 밤에 비 왔것더라.

“ It must have rained last night.”

136.—In the Basal Conjugation, we find that the form in **더** is defective, and is not used with what is most commonly known as the ordinary polite termination. It is, however, found in both low and high forms. In addition to this, this form from its very nature, occurs less frequently in the direct indicative form, than when joined with one or other of the conjunctions; and it was this fact, together with the defect in the verb itself, that led the writers of the “Grammaire Coréenne” to classify the form in **더니** as a simple imperfect, or rather as the ending for all of what they termed “Secondary tenses.”

The ending **니** is a conjunction, and it is this absence of discrimination between conjunction, and simple termination, that has made the study of the verb, so involved. This distinction must always be made, and when we find that the English word that we have taken to represent a certain conjunction will not hold with certain forms of the verb, we have no right to conclude, that the same form, used in the same way, but after a different mood or tense of the verb is a different conjunction, but simply that the investigations

that we have made thus far, have been wrong. From neglect of this rule, and from omitting almost entirely a distinction between termination proper, and true conjunction, a great deal of confusion has arisen. The cause of the want of discrimination has been, that when a conjunction unites itself to a Korean verb, the termination proper is dropped, and in the literal sense of the word, the conjunction becomes the termination. If, however, we desire to arrive at anything like a true conception of the Korean verb, this distinction *must* be made, and held throughout. What, we here denominate "*termination*" or "*termination proper*," is *that part of a verb which ends a direct statement, in an independent sentence*, and in Korean, this varies with the relative positions of the speaker and the one addressed.

In dependent clauses, the dependence is shown in Korean by the use of one or other of the conjunctions, and when this is done, as was just noted, the termination is dropped.

In exclamatory sentences also, the interjection will often be affixed to the verb, and here again the termination is dropped.

137.—In considering the terminations then, we find four classes, two obtained from the indicative mood, and two from what we have called the *volitive* mood.

From the Indicative.. {Declarative.
 {Interrogative.

From the Volitive.....{Propositive.
 {Imperative.

The difference between the terminations under each head, is the relative position of the speaker, and the person spoken to. There is also a further difference in Korean verbs, to signify the position of the subject of the act or state.

In the declarative and interrogative terminations, having to do simply with the person speaking, and the person addressed, this consideration has no effect; but in the volitive, where the person addressed and the person speaking, *must* in the one case, and may in the other, be at the same time, the subject of the verb, a change may and generally does occur. For a further understanding of Korean honorifics see Chap. XI, Part I.

DECLARATIVE TERMINATIONS.

138.—The declarative terminations as given below are given in the order of their relative use, beginning with the terms for addressing inferiors.

They are given throughout with the three verbs **하** (*to do*), **먹소** (*to eat*), and **깊소** (*to be deep*), in the present tense.

Note.—The first two are active verbs, one with a stem ending in a vowel, the other in a consonant; the second is a neuter verb.

It will be noticed that in the form used for inferiors, the present tense root **ㅅ** of an active verb or a remnant of it, is generally seen. Of course this does not appear in the neuter verb, and when uniting with the other tense roots.

DECLARATIVE TERMINATIONS.

PRESENT TENSE.

	(He does).	(He eats).	(It is deep).	Termination.	
(1)	한다.....	먹는다.....	깊다.....	다.....	Used to servants, children, etc.
(2)	하네.....	먹네.....	깊혜.....	에.....	Used to intimate friends, aged servants, etc.
(3)	하오.....	먹소.....	깊소.....	오 OR 소.....	Polite form among equals.
(4)	하지요.....	먹지요.....	깊지요.....	지요.....	Honoric terms in the order given.
(5)	하옵지요.....	먹소옵지요.....	깊소옵지요.....	옵지요.....	
(6)	하노이다.....	먹노이다.....	깊노이다.....	소노이다.....	
(7)	하옵노이다...	먹소옵노이다...	깊소옵노이다...	소노이다...	

Note.—These last are pronounced *ham-ni-da*, *mōk-sim-ni-da*, and *kip-sim-ni-da*.

These terminations for the most part can be used with all the simple tenses, though the future tense in ㄹ is defective, and as far as terminations are concerned, follows in the line of the compound tenses. In (1) and (2) the ㅏ or its remnant in ㅑ was seen. This of course disappears with the other tenses and it may also be noted that the terminations

(5) and (7) take the form in ㅏ when the verbal stem or tense root to which they are affixed ends in consonants.

Note.—It would be well, right in this place, to notice that the form in ㅖ is without doubt a remnant of the old honorific form in ㅜ and if we were to write in the ways of the ancients, should be written thus. Time, however has changed this, and to-day ㅜ is the form in common use and must then be taken as correct. The old form in ㅜ is still found in such forms as ㅎ오네 etc.

139.—To illustrate the use of these terminations and their method of affixing themselves to tense roots, we give the following with the past tense.

PAST TENSE.

	(He did).	(He ate).	(It was deep).	Termination.	
(1)	ㅎ엿다.....	먹엇다.....	깊엇다.....	다.....	To servants children, etc.
(2)	ㅎ엿데.....	먹엇데.....	깊엇데.....	에.....	To intimate friends, girl servants, etc.
(3)	ㅎ엿소.....	먹엇소.....	깊엇소.....	소.....	Polite form used among equals.
(4)	ㅎ엿지오.....	먹엇지오.....	깊엇지오.....	지오.....	
(5)	ㅎ엿스옵지오.....	먹엇스옵지오.....	깊엇스옵지오.....	스옵지오.....	
(6)	ㅎ엿스이다.....	먹엇스이다.....	깊엇스이다.....	스이다.....	Honorifics in the order given.
(7)	ㅎ엿스옵스이다..	먹엇스옵스이다...	깊엇스옵스이다...	스옵스이다...	

140.—The Future tense in **리** and compound tenses are defective. In the compound tenses we have only the following forms :—

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{할 더 리} \\ \text{할 데} \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{Used to inferiors.}$

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{할 더 이 다} \\ \text{할 읍 더 이 다} \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots\dots \text{Used to superiors.}$

Note.—It will be noticed that in this last **더** becomes part of the termination.

In the Future in **리**, we find but two forms :—

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{할 리 리} \\ \text{할 리 이 다} \end{array} \right\} \dots\dots (I \text{ will do it}).$

 Used to inferiors ,, ,, superiors

The **리** used above, is the **리** that ends a statement, but is only used to inferiors. From this, we also get another form **노 리** which is a decided statement and is much used in books.

We find also the ending **노 리** used in much the same way with any one of the tense roots, but restricted to the first person.

Like this also there is the form of assent or agreement in **마** which is joined to the root and has a future sense.

The following illustrate the use of these terminations.

모군이 오늘 일 잘 한다. The coolies are working well to-day.

말 비호라고 이 책을 I am making this book to
 하네. study the language.

리 보라고 장소 호요.	In order to make money, I am in business.
벼슬홀 생각으로 공부 잘 호엿지요..	Because I desired office I studied hard.
갑시 만호니 집이 도켓 소읍지요.	As the price was high the house will be a good one.
나라를 위호야 죽겠노 이다.	I will die for my country.
어제논 내가 일 만히 호엿다.	I did a good deal of work yesterday.
그 사람 도 말 잘 비학데.	That man too has learned to speak well.
아까 화륜거가 썬소.	The train left a little while ago.
발서 편지 호엿소읍지요.	I wrote the letter some time ago.
흔들 전에 죽엇 노이다.	He died a month ago.
이 책을 비게 주노라.	I give this book to you.
리일은 내가 가마.	I will go to-morrow.

INTERROGATIVE TERMINATIONS.

141.—The Interrogative Terminations are almost more numerous than the Declarative. They are given below in the same order and with the same three verbs as the Declarative.

INTERROGATIVE TERMINATIONS.

PRESENT TENSE.

	(Do you go?)	(Do you eat?)	(Is it deep?).	Termination.	
(1)	흥 > 나	먹 > 나	깊 > 나	> 나 or 으 나	Used to servants and inferiors, the latter is familiar.
(2)	흥 > 니	먹 > 니	깊 > 니	> 니 or 으 니	
(3)	흥 > 호	먹 > 호	깊 > 호	> 호 or 으 호	
(4)	흥 나 +	먹 나	(Used only with active verbs).	나	These are called 반 말 or half talk and are used among friends or where one does not desire to be polite.
(5)	흥 지	먹 지	깊 지	지	
(6)	흥 노 +	먹 노	(Used only with active verbs).	노	
(7)	흥 오	먹 소	깊 소	오 or 소	Polite terms among equals, slightly honorific.
(8)	흥 지 오	먹 지 으	깊 지 오	지 오	
(9)	흥 > 니 외 가	먹 > 니 외 가	깊 > 니 외 가	> 니 외 가	Honorifics.
	흥 > 니 외 가	먹 소 > 니 외 가	깊 소 > 니 외 가	소 > 니 외 가 or > 니 외 가	

* Note.—These last are pronounced *hamuika*, *mōksimūika* and *kipsimūika*.

† Note.—In Kyeng Sang Do both these terms may be employed as terms of respect, and are used to both superiors and inferiors.

142.—These terminations are even more regular in their use with the other tenses than the Declarative, but to illustrate their use the following table is given.

PAST TENSE.

	(Did you do?)	(Did you eat?)	(Was it deep.)	Termination.	
(1)	{ 흥었느야 니 호	먹었느야 니 호	깊었느야 니 호	{ 느야 니 호	Used to servants in- feriors etc., the latter is familiar.
(2)	흥었나	먹었나	깊었노	나	These are called 반말 and are used among
(3)	흥었지	먹었지	{ Used only with active verbs.	지	friends or where one
(4)	흥었노	먹었노	{ Used only with active verbs.	노	does not desire to be polite.
(5)	흥었소	먹었소	깊었소	소	Polite terms among
(6)	흥었지요	먹었지요	깊었지요	지요	equals.
(7)	흥었느니외가	먹었느니외가	깊었느니외가	느니외가	
(8)	흥었소옵느니외가	먹었소옵느니외가	깊었소옵느니외가	소옵느니외가	Honorific.
(9)					

143.—In the use of the Interrogative terminations, also, the future in **리** and the compound tenses are defective.

(Was he doing.)

(Was it deep.)

Termination.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| (1) 하더냐 | 깊더냐 | 냐 | To inferiors. |
| (2) 하더노 | 깊더노 | 노 | "Half talk." |
| (3) 하더니 의가... | 깊더니 의가..... | 니 의가... | } To superiors. |
| (4) 하옵더니 의가 | 깊소옵더니 의가 | | |

Note.—It will be noticed that in this last, the tense root enters and becomes part of the termination.

For the future in **리**, we naturally have only the form to a superior.

하리의가.

Shall I do it.

Note.—The interrogative particle **가** which properly is an exclamation and can be affixed to any part of the verb, is used for the most part in soliloquies; but can also be used in questions. When so used the termination proper is dropped, and it is affixed. It may also be affixed to any of the relative participles.

PROPOSITIVE TERMINATIONS.

144.—What we have termed propositive terminations, are used when the proposition is made, in the doing of which the speaker is to be a party. It can consequently be only of the first person and in the plural. They are joined to the verbal stem and no tense root is used.

They are as follows :—

(Let us be doing). (Let us seize). (Let us go). Termination.

- | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|
| (1) | 하 자..... 잡 자..... 가 자..... | 자 | { To servants
boys, etc. |
| (2) | 하 세..... 잡 세..... 가 세..... | 세 | |
| (3) | 하 지..... 잡 지..... 가 지..... | 지 | { Among equals
("half talk"). |
| (4) | 하 읍 세 다... 잡 읍 세 다 가 읍 세 다 읍 세 다 | 읍 세 다 |  | { Honorific. |
| | 하 읍 시 다... 잡 읍 시 다 가 읍 시 다 읍 시 다 | | 읍 시 다 |
| (5) | 하 시 읍 세 다 잡 시 읍 ... 가 시 읍 세 다 | | |

Note.—In regard to these terminations, there is a dispute among Koreans; some claiming that (4) and (5) should always end in **시다**, the **시** being the same as in **하시오** and purely honorific. Others, however, claim it as an honorific form of (2) and that **세다** should always be used. This last seems the most reasonable, but **시다** is very largely employed.

IMPERATIVE TERMINATIONS.

145.—The Imperative terminations are used when ordering a person or persons to do something, and are from their nature restricted to the second person and may be singular or plural, that is to say, may command one or more than one.

They are much more numerous than the forgoing and are as follows :—

(Do or do thou). (Seize or seize thou). Termination.

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------------|--|
| 하 여라..... | 잡 아라..... | 어라 or 아라... | To inferiors. |
| 하 게..... | 잡 게..... | 게 | { "Half talk to
friends, etc. |
| 하 소..... | 잡 소..... | 소 | |
| 하 오..... | 잡 으오..... | 오 or 으오..... | { Polite among
equals. |
| 하 시오..... | 잡 으시오..... | 시오 or 으시오 | { More polite,
about like
"please do
it." |
| 하 읍 시오..... | 잡 으습 시오... | 읍 시오 | |
| | | OR
으습 시오 | { Honorific;
used in en-
treaties. |
| 하 시 읍 시오... | 잡 으시 읍 시오 | 시 읍 시오 | |
| 하 호 석..... | 잡 호 석..... | 호 석 | { Used in
prayers. |

MOODS.

146.—In the Basal Conjugation we have but two moods, with Participles, Supine and Bases.

The two moods are the Indicative and the Volitive.

147.—The Indicative Mood asserts the action or state expressed by the verb, simply as a fact, or asks whether it is a fact. It is used in dependent as well as independent sentences, but when in dependent clauses the termination is generally replaced by some other word, as a conjunction. It may at times then be rendered by either the indicative, subjunctive or potential mood of the English.

148.—What we have here called the Volitive Mood is that mood which expresses the wish of the speaker. It may be either in the form of a proposition to do something, in which act the speaker shall participate, which is then of the first person plural, or it may be in the form of a command, exhortation or entreaty, when it will be of the second person and may be used for either the singular or plural.

Note.—This mood has been called by some the imperative, and the two classes given above have been called respectively plural and singular. The *singular* may, however, also be used for the plural, and aside from this fact the first person volitive can never in any sense be called a *command*. Better than this, it would be to call these two distinct moods; but this is hardly necessary, and it seems much better to us, to class both as belonging to the volitive mood, the one in the first person plural, and the other in the second person.

PARTICIPLES.

149.—Like the Greek, Korean presents us with what we have called two classes of participles, the first,

which we call Verbal Participles, corresponding in use to what, in Greek, is commonly known as the “Participle;” and the second, which we call Relative Participles, corresponding almost exactly to the Greek “Verbal Adjective.” Most Korean adjectives, being derived from verbs, it has seemed best to us to hold to this division, which was made in the “Grammaire Coreénne,” and thus avoid the chance of confusion.

VERBAL PARTICIPLES.

150.—What we here call Verbal Participle, we thus name, because it partakes more of the character of a verb than the relative participle as far as its use is concerned.

Without a direct affirmation, it expresses its meaning as an accompanying quality or condition of the subject or object of the principal verb. Of these verbal participles, we do not like the Greek have one for each tense, we have only two, a past and a future. That most commonly found is the past and this is formed by adding **ㅁ** or **ㅁ**, or a euphonic modification, to the verbal stem. The future verbal participle is made by **ㄱ** to the verbal stem.

151.—In connection with the Verbal Participle in **ㅁ** and **ㅁ**, there has been much discussion. The attempt has been made by many to prove that the form in **ㅁ** is present and that in **ㅁ** past. This theory has found much favor with some. It has arisen from the fact that with not a few verbs both forms are found, and that the past indicative, generally forms itself in **ㅁ**.

There are, however, great difficulties with this theory.

In the first place, in those verbs where there are two forms they are to-day used interchangeably by the Koreans, and only when hard pressed for a distinction by a foreigner will they acknowledge a difference, and state that it is temporal. This, however, is not the main difficulty. If this distinction of present and past holds; we are then presented with the anomaly of a host of verbs, active, neuter and passive which, irrespective of their meaning, have no present verbal participle; and, on the other hand, a multitude with no past verbal participle. We see also that those verbs which (according to this theory) have no past verbal participle, form their indicative *past* in **았**.

152.—In looking at these verbs, however, we find verbs of a certain form or spelling taking all their verbal participles in **아**, and another class with a different form taking them in **어** and between these not a few which may take either. We are left, then, to but one conclusion, that the forms in **아** and **어** are not two forms to represent different tenses, but rather the two forms which the same tense may assume for the sake of Korean euphony.

The general rule is, that all verbs the ultima of whose stems have the sound of **아** or **오**, form their past verbal participle in **아** or **야** and all others in **어** or **여**.

To this rule, there may be a few exceptions.

153.—The verbal participle in **어** is treated by the Koreans in much the same way as a noun, and to it may be affixed postpositions and conjunctions, some of which very much modify its meaning. The postposi-

tions, most commonly, affixed are **석** (a contraction of **에 석**), **야** and **는**.

Note.—The **석** here spoken of, is often written **씩** and is supposed to be the verbal part. from **쓰오** (to use). There is no need for this, especially as we find such a tendency among Koreans to contract the postposition **에 석**.

These postpositions may or may not be affixed, but if definiteness of expression is desired, they must be employed. When used, they slightly modify the meaning.

항 석, “Having done,” or “doing.”

항 석 석, “After” or “by having done.”

항 석 석 는, “As for after having done” = “If you do.”

항 석 는, { “As for doing,” or “as for having done”
(rarely used).

항 석 야, “Only having done” “by only doing.”

항 석 석 야, { “Only after having done,” “only when
you have done.”

154.—The following sentences will illustrate the use of these postpositions.

롱소 항 석 사 는 사 롬 이오. He is a man that lives by farming.

이 것 항 석 무엇 항 겿 소. What are you doing this for?
(Lit. This having done, what will do)?

장소 항 석 석 부작 되 엿 소. Having been a farmer, he has become rich.

조선에 가 석 장소 항 겿 소. I will go to Korea and engage in commerce.

(Lit. Korea-to having gone, commerce will make).

아니 먹어 석논 죽겠소. If you do not eat this, you
(Lit. This not having eaten as for, will die.

그러케 팔아 석논 밋지
겠소. If you sell in that way,
(Lit. That way having sold as for, you will lose.

그 약 먹어석논 낫지
안겟다. If you take that medicine,
(Lit. That medicine taking as for, you will not get better.

오늘 일 다 흥여야 삭
주겟다. You must finish your work,
(Lit. To-day work all having done if I am to pay you to-day.

은행소에 가야 돈을 엇
겟소. You must go to the bank
(Lit. The Bank-to having gone only, to get the money.

일본 외석야 보왔소. I had to come to Japan to
(Lit. Japan after having come-only, see it.

조선 가석야 알왔소. I had to go to Korea to
(Lit. Korea after having gone only, make his acquaintance.

155.—Before we turn to the consideration of the Relative Participles a few words on the uses of these Verbal Participles must be given.

There can of course be no agreement between it and its subject and it may be used with either the subject or object of the principal verb.

Its main uses are as follows :—

Referring to the subject.

1st. Simply to connect an accompanying, with a main action. When so used the participle and verb may be rendered by two verbs with a conjunction, or sometimes by one English verb containing the two ideas.

Note.—For the difference between a participle so used with a verb, and two verbs united by a conjunction see Part II. Chapter X. Sec. I.

남산 으로 가서 꽃을 Go to Nam San and get
얻어 오너라. some flowers.

(Lit. Nam San-to having gone, flower
having got come).

내가 조선 으로 가 말 I went to Korea and learn-
비웠소. ed the language.

내가 조선 약을 가져 I brought some Korean
왔소. medicine.

(Lit. Korean medicine having taken, came).

156.—2nd. To combine this *accompanying* action, with the main action, as the cause, manner or means.

Note.—When so used, it is exactly equivalent to the Ablative Gerund of Latin, and it is rather strange that heretofore this fact should have been overlooked and the Korean Supine, which has none of the force of a gerund, should have been called a gerund.

Cause :—

어제 비 와서 물이 만소. There is a great deal of
water, because it rained
yesterday.

무거워 못 쓰겠소. It will not do, because it is
too heavy.

무엇 하여 죽 었소. Why was he killed ?

(Lit. What having done died ?)

Means :—

내가 약을 먹어서 낫소. I took medicine and am better.

도적질 하여 사오. They live by plundering.

버러 먹어 사오. He lives by begging.

Manner :—

다라나서 피하였소. They escaped by flight.

담대 하여 호랑이 있는
터로 갔소. He boldly went to the
place where the tiger
was.

157.—This Participle is used also in connection with the object of the principal verb, or with a person or thing, mentioned in the sentence. It then conveys some idea of *time, cause, condition* ; but the relation intended and as a consequence, the true rendering of the participle in English, can only be learned from the nature of the sentence or the connection in which it stands.

When this is done, the object of the principal verb, or the person or thing mentioned to which the participle has reference, is considered as the subject of the verb contained in the participle ; and, if a postposition is used, it will be the sign of the nominative. It becomes, then, a dependent clause and in this way, we may at times have a number of nouns with the nominative sign, one after the other.

내가 친구가 병드러서 가
보왔소. I went to see my friend,
when (or because) he
was sick.

꽃이 빛이 많아서 잘
피오. Flowers bloom well, when
there is much sunshine.

늙은이 눈이 어두어서 The old man can not read
책을 잘 못 보오. well, because his eyes
are poor.

배가 힘이 량식이 업서서 I pity those who are starv-
굶는 거슬 불상이 ing for lack of food.
넉이오.

N.B.—Note the three nominatives in this sentence.

158.—This Verbal Participle is also largely used in the making of compound verbs. When such compounds are made, their meaning can always be obtained by translating them as simple verbs.

As:—

가져오오, (“*having taken, to come*”) to bring.

가져가오, (“*having taken, to go*”) to take away.

먹어보오, (“*having eaten, to see*”) to taste.

무러보오, (“*having asked, to see*”) to enquire.

여러긋소, (“*having opened, to put*”) to leave open.

* 올라가오, (“*having mounted, to go*”) to mount (in going).

† 올려두오, (“*having elevated, to put*”) to put up.

Note.—It will be seen throughout that in many places, the Korean verbal participle past can be rendered in English by the present. This, however, does not affect its being a past tense and in all these places, it will be seen that with equal exactness, and generally with more, the past would give the sense, although the English idiom requires the present.

159.—The Future Verbal Participle is not by any means as often met with as the past.

The most common of its uses are:—

1st. With some particle such as **시리** (*so as to*), when it has the effect of giving us the form of the verb that will be rendered into English by the words “so that it will,” “so that it can.”

* From **오르오**, to mount, to climb.

† From **올리오**, to elevate, to raise.

As :—

김석방이 오게 시리 향 Make it so that Mr. Kim
여라. can come.

이 의자를 잘 흔들 흔들 Make this chair so that it
향게 시리 향여라. will rock well.

2nd. Used alone and preceding another verb it generally signifies that in order for which, the action of the principal verb is done, and may be rendered into English by *that*, *so that*, *in order that*, *to*.

이 꽃을 그 인히 가지게 Give the flowers to the
주오. boy that he may take
them away.

방이 더웁게 석탄 만히 Put on plenty of coal, that
너혀라. the room may be warm.

석을 가게 고운 엇여라. Get some chair coolies that
we may go to Seoul.

밥 먹게 오너라. Come to eat.

3rd. The second and by far the the most common use which is derived from the preceding, is with the verb 향오 ; giving us, the force of a causative to be rendered into English by “to make to,” “to cause to,” etc., or it may be used with 향오 much as a sort of imperative.

As :—

그 인히 가게 향오. Make that boy go.

이 꽃치 보기 토흐니 As these flowers are so
사게 향오. pretty, you had better
buy them.

영어를 알면 천하에 돈 Since, if you know Eng-
 녀도 말을 통할거시니 lish, it will be a means
 잘 비호게 함오. of communication even
 though you travel over
 the whole world, study
 hard.

공부를 지금 아니 함면 Since, if you do not study
 후회 날 거시니 힘써 now, you will regret it
 함게 함오. hereafter, you had better
 take pains to study well.

RELATIVE PARTICIPLES.

160.—What we have here called the Relative Participle is rather a verbal adjective derived from the verb. As, however, almost all Korean adjectives are *verbal adjectives* derived from what may be termed “adjectival verbs” to avoid confusion we have held to this term as has been already stated.

In use the Relative Participle always stands as an adjective qualifying some noun and may generally be rendered into English by a relative clause.

As a consequence, it cannot be united to the various postpositions, unless it is first made a noun by the use of such words, as **사람** (*man*), **것** (*thing*) or one of the pronouns, or, as is often done, by the use of the postposition **이** signifying “*the man*.”

161.—The four Relative Participles most commonly used, may be termed; Present, Past, Future, and Future Past.

The use of the terms *Present* and *Past* is, as will be seen, a little unfortunate and the terms *Active* and *Passive* have been suggested. The same difficulty existing with these latter as with the former, we prefer to retain the former.

162.—What we have termed the Present Participle is formed by adding ㅅ to the verbal stem.

It will be noticed that the Present Participle follows the lead of the present tense and where in the present tense the stem is slightly modified, this modified form is used in the present participle. This modification for the most part occurs in verbs whose stems end in ㄷ simple. When this is the case the ㄷ is dropped in forming the present, both indicative and participle. In verbs whose stems contain a latent ㅎ, this is not done even though it end in ㄷ. Then the stem is used, though of course the latent ㅎ cannot appear in ㅅ.

Note.—It has been said, and with much reason, that this ㅅ should rather be called an “active particle” than a “present tense root” for it is only used with *active verbs*; and with *neuter verbs* is never found. However, it always has a *present* sense and can at times be used with almost a passive idea so we prefer to call it simply the *present participle*.

When used, this participle has the effect of signifying the person or thing who is now acting, or, though rarely, being acted upon. It may, then, be rendered into English by the relative pronoun with *is* and a present participle, or with the simple present of the verb, or by a new dependent clause.

외국에 가면 아는 사람이 적소.	If I go to a foreign country, there will be few whom I know.
-------------------	--

비호지 아니 할면 아논 If one does not study, one
거시 업겟소. knows nothing.

지금 할논 사롬 쉬이 굿치 The man who is working
겟소. now will soon stop.

163.—What we have termed the Past Participle, is formed by adding 은, (which may undergo a variety of euphonic changes), to the verbal stem. There is little regularity about the special form that this participle shall take ; any rules based on the form of the verb will have a number of exceptions.

The following will, however, help :—

1st. All verbs whose stem ends in a vowel, form their Past Relative Participle by simply adding ㅁ. Here we see the 은 contracts, and to uphold the character of the verb, its vowel or combination of vowels is retained.

Thus :—

가오 (to go) 간 (gone).

오오 (to come) 온 (come).

보오 (to see) 본 (seen).

할오 (to do) 한 (done).

2nd. Verbs whose stem ends in ㄱ, ㅋ, or ㆁ, form their Past Relative Participle by adding 은 to the verbal stem ; in some cases at the same time doubling the final letter of the stem.

Thus :—

죽소 (<i>to die</i>)	죽은 (dead).
먹소 (<i>to eat</i>)	먹은 (eaten).
낚소 (<i>to fish</i>)	낚은 (fished).
숨소 (<i>to hide</i>).....	숨은 (hidden).
감소 (<i>to bathe</i>)	감은 (bathed).
안소 (<i>to carry in one's arms</i>).	안은 (carried in arms).
신소 (<i>to put on, of shoes</i>)	신은 (put on).

3rd. Verbs whose stem ends in ㅅ in joining 은 to form their Past Relative Participle follow the form of the past verbal participle, and where with this a consonant has been changed or added to the stem, take the same added or changed consonant with 은. After ㅅ, ㅈ, or ㅊ; according to the Korean rules of euphony, this 은 becomes ㅓ, ㅗ or ㅜ; but in all other cases the 은 is retained.

Thus :—

받소 (<i>to receive</i>)	V.P. 받아, R.P. 받은	(received).
믿소 (<i>to believe</i>)	,, ,, 믿어, ,, ,,	밧은 (believed).
씻소 (<i>to wash</i>)	,, ,, 씻석, ,, ,,	씻슨 (washed).
찾소 (<i>to find</i>)	,, ,, 찾자, ,, ,,	찾즌 (found).
벗소 { <i>to take off</i> clothes. }	,, ,, 벗석, ,, ,,	벗슨 (taken off).
들소 (<i>to hear</i>)	,, ,, 드려, ,, ,,	드룬 (heard).
묻소 (<i>to ask</i>)	,, ,, 무려, ,, ,,	무룬 (asked).
곳소 (<i>to place</i>)	,, ,, 노하, ,, ,,	노흔 (placed).
맡소 { <i>to receive</i> <i>in trust.</i> }	,, ,, 맡하, ,, ,,	맡흔 {received in trust. }

4th. Verbs containing a latent **ㅎ**, form their Past Relative Participle in **흔**, irrespective of the final letter of the stem.

Thus :—

갓소 (<i>to pay</i>)	갓흔 (<i>paid</i>).
덮소 (<i>to cover</i>)	덮흔 (<i>covered</i>).
잃소 (<i>to lose</i>)	잃흔 (<i>lost</i>).
알소 (<i>to be sick</i>)	알흔 (<i>sick</i>).

5th. Verbs whose stems end in **ㅂ** form their Perfect Relative Participle after the form of the verbal participle, those whose past verbal participle is in **워** or **와** form the past relative participle in **운** or **온** : all the others in **은** interposing the changed or added consonant of the verbal participle if there were any.

	V.P.		R.P.	
업소, (<i>to be lacking</i>)	,, 업서,	,, 업슨,	(<i>lacking</i>).	
업소, (<i>to carry on the back</i>)	,, 업어,	,, 업은,	(<i>carried</i>).	
잡소, (<i>to seize</i>)	,, 잡아,	,, 잡은,	(<i>seized</i>).	
곱소, (<i>to be beautiful</i>)	,, 곱하,	,, 곱흔,	(<i>beautiful</i>).	
갓잡소, (<i>to be near</i>)	,, 갓가워,	,, 갓가운,	(<i>near</i>).	
가볍소, (<i>to be light</i>)	,, 가볍야워,	,, 가볍야온,	(<i>light</i>).	
아름답소, (<i>to be charming</i>)	,, 아름답와,	,, 아름답온,	(<i>charming</i>).	
아니꼽소, (<i>to be nauseating</i>)	,, 아니꼬와,	,, 아니꼬온,	(<i>nauseating</i>).	

There are several exceptions to each of these rules, and the only safe way for the student is, when he learns a new verb, to learn it with its principal parts.

164.—In use, the Past Relative Participle coincides with the present relative participle, except that the past tense will be used in rendering it into English. At times, also, it may have a passive sense.

Note.—Where this passive sense holds, it is really, because the Koreans do not like to use the passive voice, but in rendering it into English a passive should be used.

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 네가 받은 편지 어디
두었느냐. | Where have you put the
letter you received? |
| 이 칼이 네가 얻은 거시냐. | Is this the knife that you
got? |
| 벗은 옷 빨래 하오. | Wash the clothes we have
taken off. |
| 씻은 그릇 가져 오너라. | Bring the dishes that have
been washed. |
| 너는 말 생각 못하느냐. | Can not you think of the
word you forgot? |
| 저는 옷을 말려라. | Dry the wet clothes. |
| 공자를 조춘 사람이 만소. | The followers of Confu-
cious are many. |
| 오늘 못춘 일은 삭
주어라. | Pay him for what he has
finished today. |
| 어제 드룬 말이 거짓
말이오. | What you heard yesterday
is false. |
| 아사 무론 말을 하
못느냐. | Do you again ask the
question you just asked? |
| 넌의 맡은 돈은 쓰지
마라. | Do not use money that
you hold in trust for
another. |
| 책에 너흔 책을 가져
오오. | Bring the book that was
put in the box. |

165.—The Past Relative Participle of a neuter verb, simply proclaims the existence of the state or condition, and may be rendered by the present or an adjective.

더웁소	(to be hot)	더운	(hot or being hot).
깊소	(to be deep) ...	깊은	(deep or being deep).
무겁소	(to be heavy)...	무거운	(heavy or being heavy).
밝소	(to be bright)...	밝은	(bright or being bright).
늙소	(to be old).....	늙은	(old or being old).

166.—The Future Relative Participle may be formed from the past by changing ㅍ into ㄱ.

It has the force of *about to*, and may be generally rendered by a relative clause with a future verb. It may be used to express, permission, ability or simple futurity.

일 잘 할 모균을 불러.	Call coolies who will work well.
서울 갈 사람을 내가 기다리오.	I am waiting for some one who will go to Seoul.
미국서 올 궤가 아직 아니 왔소.	The box that is coming from America has not yet come.
병들면 음식 먹을 생각이 아조 업소.	When any one is sick, they have no desire to eat.
도흔 책 이면 볼 맛음이 만소.	If it is a good book, it will be very popular.
갑시 대단이 비싸 살 맛음이 업다.	As the price is so high, I do not want to buy it.

167.—The Future Past Relative Participle is formed by adding ㅅ to the tense root of the indicative past.

It is not nearly as much in use as the three already mentioned ; but with **것, 출, 시** etc. gives a past effect to their rendering with the future participle. These renderings may be seen and explained in the following :—

편지가 왔실 출 알았더니 I had thought the letter
아니 왔소. would have come, but it
has not.

어제 늦게 떠났으니 거기 As he started late yester-
까지 아직 못왔을 수 day, he will not have
업섯것다. been able to have reached
there yet.

도적놈이 갔실 거시니 As the thieves must have
우리 자자. gone, let us sleep.

168.—A quite common, and much used Relative Participle, is formed from the progressive tense by adding **ㅓ** to the tense root.

It gives us then a true Imperfect Relative Participle that generally has a past sense.

어제 왔던 장수가 또 The merchant who came
왔소. yesterday has come
again.

아침에 먹던 사과 또 사 Buy some more of the
오 너라. fruit we were eating this
morning.

여러히 보고 싶던 친구가 The friend whom I had
오늘 왔소. been wanting to see for
many years came this
morning.

아까 왔던 사람이 누 Who was that who came a
구요. little while ago ?

169.—In addition to these, relative participles may be formed almost at will by adding **는** to the simple, and **ㅁ** to the compound tenses of the indicative mood.

This form of the participle is at times found qualifying a noun ; but is more often used with particles employed conjunctively or adverbially ; such as—**지** or **가** meaning “*whether*” or **가** and **고**, used in soliloquies, signifying *doubt* etc.

그 사람이 갔**는지** 알**수** 업**소**. I can not tell whether he has gone.

김석방이 왔**는가** 가 보**아**라. Go and see whether Mr. Kim has come.

그 **은**희가 약을 먹**었** **는**가 가 보**고** 오**너**라. Go and see whether that boy has taken his medicine, and let me know.

FORMER SUPINE.

170.—There is a form of the Basal Conjugation that in use is exactly equivalent to the Latin *Supine in um*, and we have therefore called it the “Former Supine.”

It is generally formed by adding **러** or **랴** to the verbal stem. This form generally follows in the lead of the past verbal participle, taking its stem.

When the stem ends in a consonant, a vowel, either **으** or **으**, will be used as a connective.

Note.—Verbal stems ending in **ㄹ** generally take their supine in **ㅏ** or **ㅓ**. As: 알**ㅏ** from 아**오** (to know). Where, however, there is a **ㄹ** in the past verbal participle, which is either a changed or added consonant, and which does not appear where the stem precedes a consonant, this same **ㄹ** appears in the supine ; but the connecting consonant must be there, and the Supine is found in **으러**. Thus:—들**소** (to hear) has 들**러** for its past verbal participle, but its future is 들**겟소** and hence we find 들**르러** (the **으** following **ㄹ** becomes **으**) for the supine.

The supine is used for the most part with verbs of motion, although we do at times find it with other verbs, to signify the purpose of the act.

리일 일하러 오너라.	Come to-morrow to work.
책 가질러 왔소.	He has come to get the book.
공부 하러 왔소.	He has come to study.

VERBAL NOUNS

171.—The Korean verb presents us with two verbal nouns, and by some these have been said to be interchangeable. Such is not the case, however, and the distinction made in ¶ 53, should always be observed.

The one is formed by adding □ to the stem. A very simple rule for the formation of this noun, is to replace the √ of the past relative participle by □.

Thus :—

VERB.		PAST REL. PART.		VERBAL NOUN.	
믿소,	(to trust)	믿은,	gives us	믿음,	(faith).
잊소,	(to forget)	잊은,	, ,	잊음,	(forgetfulness).
아름답소,	(to be beautiful)	아름다운,	, ,	아름다움,	(beauty).

For sentences illustrating its use see ¶ 53.

172.—The other verbal noun is formed by the use of 기. In use it is exactly equivalent to the “Latter Supine” or “Supine in u” of Latin.

The most common form in which it is met, is the stem as seen in the future, with 기.

Each simple tense may however have its own noun in 기; which is then formed by simply replacing its termination by 기.

Thus we may have:—

흥기, 흥였기, 흥겠기, & 흥였겠기.

173.—This noun, when used with the various post-positions, has at times a somewhat different effect; such as cause manner, etc.

Most of these will in a moment be apparent from a literal translation, but a few words about the most frequent forms will be in place.

It is very largely used with 는, in phrases and sentences where in English we would simply change the tone. In these sentences, the verbal noun in 기 of the principal verb in the sentence will be used, and immediately precede the verb. It has the effect of showing *lack of interest, doubt as to the result*, etc. of the action expressed by the verbs. Its true sense can always be gained, by rendering the verbal noun by the English noun in *ing*, and preceding it by the words, *as for*.

그 집이 토키는 토흐나 That house is good but it
조금 적소. is a little small.

(Lit. That house being-good-as-for
good although, little small is.

이 거시 비싸 기는 This is dear; but it is
비싸것 마논 보기에 pretty.
토소.

그 시계가 보기는 토홀 As far as the looks of that
지라도 갑시 비싸오. watch are concerned it
is good, but it is high
priced.

174.—We find it also used many times with the postposition **에** having then a causal effect.

그 사람이 의원을 만났
기에 살았소. That man's life was saved
through his meeting the
doctor.

도적놈이 왔기에 큰 소리
හ었소. I made a great noise be-
cause thieves came.

그 하인이 일잘 하였기에
상급으로 비단 한 필
주었소. Because that servant has
done his work well I
have given him a bolt of
satin.

약 먹기에 돈이 만히
업서졌소. In the taking of medicine
I have spent a good deal
of money.

그 총이 도킬새 노로로
만히 잡았소. I killed a good many deer
because the gun was
good.

Note.—This last, while considered by many a corruption of **기에**, is in all probability a contraction of the noun in **기** and some part of the verb **이오** (to be). It is in such general use now that some even call it a causal conjunction.

175.—When used with **로** it can often be rendered by the English infinitive.

미국을 리일 쉼나기로
작정 하였소. I have decided to start for
America to-morrow.

약 먹기로 의원 의게 말
하였소. I spoke to the doctor about
taking some medicine.

집 짓기로 형님 의게
귀별 하였소. I have sent word to my
brother that I am build-
ing a house.

편지 쓰기로 다른 일 못
하였소. I have been unable to at-
tend to any thing else on
account of letter writing.

177.—A negative idea in Korean, may be expressed either by the use of a simple negative preceding the verb as in English, or a negative verb may be formed. When this is done, what has well been termed a Negative Base is used. This base is formed by affixing **ㅁ** to the verbal stem. Strange to say, in many verbs we may have two forms of this base, one formed from the stem as found in the present indicative, and one from that of the future indicative.

This same form of the verb is always used when a negative verb is employed.

For its use and examples see ¶. 206 ff.

178.—It will be seen that four principal parts have been given, the Present Indicative, Past Verbal Participle, Future Verbal Participle, and Past Relative Participle. With a knowledge of these any other parts can be formed. In the verb **ㅅ** **오** the stem is the same throughout, but in many verbs the stem as seen in the first three may differ.

In the forming of the other parts this difference holds and, outside of the supine, desiderative base, verbal noun in **ㅁ**, and perfect tenses, the general rule may hold that, when the part or parts added to the stem begin with a consonant other than **ㅍ**, the stem as seen in the future verbal participle will be used; when with a vowel or **ㅍ**, the stem as seen in the present indicative is followed.

Note.—When the stem ends in a vowel and is followed by a vowel, a contraction may take place; when the stem ends in a consonant and is followed by a vowel, sometimes, euphony may require the main consonant to be doubled or another to be inserted.

We find then :—

Following the Present Indicative.....	{ The Present Participle and those parts of the Volitive Mood whose terminations begin with a vowel.
Following the Past Verbal Participle ...	{ The Past, Fut-Past, Pluperfect and Prob-Fut-Past tenses of the Indicative. The Future Past Participle, the Supine and the Desiderative Base.
Following the Fut. Verbal Participle ...	{ The Future, Progressive and Continued Fut. of the Indicative, those parts of the Volitive Mood whose terminations begin with a consonant; the verbal noun in ㅅ ; and the Negative Base.
Following the Past Relative Participle. {	The Future Relative Part, and the Verbal Noun in ㅁ .

179.—We have, then, the following :—

THE BASAL CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PAST VERBAL PART.	FUTURE VERBAL PART.	PAST RELATIVE PART.
ㅅ오	ㅅ엇 or ㅅ야	ㅅ게	ㅅ

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SIMPLE TENSES.

Present	ㅅ오.....	Do.
Past	ㅅ엇소.....	Did.
Future	ㅅ겟소.....	Will do.
Fut. Past.....	ㅅ엇겟소.....	Will have done.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Progressive	ㅅ더이다.....	Am or was doing.
Pluperfect	ㅅ엇더이다...	Had done.
Continued Future ...	ㅅ겟더이다...	Will be doing.
Probable Fut. Past..	ㅅ엇겟더이다	Must have done.

VOLITIVE MOOD.

1ST PERSON.

PLURAL.

To inferiors, $\text{흥자} \dots\dots$ }
 ,, equals, $\text{흥세} \dots\dots$ }
 ,, superiors, 흥옵세다 } Let us do.

2ND PERSON.

To inferiors, $\text{흥씨라} \dots\dots$ }
 ,, equals, $\text{흥게} \dots\dots$ }
 ,, superiors, 흥옵시오 } Do thou.

PARTICIPLES.

VERBAL.

Past, $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{흥씨} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{흥야} \end{array} \right\}$ having done.
 Future, 흥게 ,

RELATIVE.

Present, 흥논 , Doing.
 Past, 흥 , Done.
 Future, 흥 , About to do.
 Past, 흥던 , Done.

Verbal Nouns $\dots\dots\dots$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{흥} \\ \text{흥기} \end{array} \right\}$ Action.
 The doing.

Bases $\dots\dots$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{Neg.} \dots\dots\dots \\ \text{Desid.} \dots\dots\dots \end{array} \right\}$ 흥지 , To do.
 흥랴 , Desire to do.

Supine $\dots\dots\dots$ 흥려 , To do.

Note.—In accordance with the true Korean idea, we have given no person in the indicative mood, and we would remind the student, that any one of the parts there given, may be used with equal correctness for first, second or third persons, singular or plural. We would also call his attention to the fact, that termination 3 in the declarative table, and 6 in the interrogative, coincide, both in form and in use. The forms given in the simple tenses may then be used either affirmatively or interrogatively.

180.—A knowledge of the principal parts of any verb will enable us to carry it through this conjugation. Some of the most common verbs that are a little irregular in forming their principal parts are given at

the end of this chapter, and the student is advised to commit them.

By way of illustration the following verbs are conjugated, and as a matter of practise it would be well to take other verbs and in like manner construct paradigms.

The verb. **아오.** To know.

1. Principal Parts.

아오, 알아, 알게, 안.

2. Moods, Tenses, etc.

	INDICATIVE.	VERBAL PART. S.	RELATIVE PART. S.
Pres.	아오	—	아는.
Past.	알았소	알아	안.
Fut.	알겠소	알게	알.
Fut Perf....	알았겠소	—	알았실.
Prog.....	알고있다	—	알던.
Plup.....	알았더이다	—	—
Cont. Fut...	알겠더이다	—	—
Prob. F. P.	알았겠더이다 ...	—	—

		INF.	EQUALS.	SUP.
Volitive	{ 1st Pers. Plural.	알자,	알세,	아옵세다.
Mood.	{ 2nd Pers.	알아라,	알게,	아옵시오.

VERBAL NOUNS.	SUPINE.	BASES.
암.	알나.	Neg. 알지.
알기.		Desid. ... 알냐.

The Verb. 막소 To hinder.

I.—ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

막소, 막아, 막게, 막은.

2. Moods, Tenses, etc.

	INDICATIVE.	VERBAL PART. S.	RELATIVE PART. S.
Pres.	막소	—	막는.
Past.	막았소	막아	막은.
Fut.	막겠소	막게	막을.
Fut. Perf. ...	막았겠소	—	막았실.
Prog.	막더이다	—	막던.
Plup.	막았더이다	—	—
Cont. Fut. ...	막겠더이다	—	—
Prob. F. P.	막았겠더이다 ...	—	—

		INF.	EQUALS.	SUP.
Volitive	{ 1st Pers. Plural.	막자,	막세,	막읍세다.
Mood.	{ 2nd Pers.	막아라,	막게,	막읍시오.

VERBAL NOUNS.	SUPINE.	BASES.
막음.	막으러.	Neg. 막지.
막기.		Desid. 막으랴.

II.—PASSIVE VOICE. 막히오.

1. Principal Parts.

막히오, 막히어, 막히게, 막힌.

2. Moods, Tenses, etc.

	INDICATIVE.	VERBAL PART. S.	RELATIVE PART. S.
Pres.	막히오	—	막히는.
Past.	막히었소	막히어	막힌.
Fut.	막히겠소	막히게	막힐.
F. Perf. ...	막히었겠소	—	막히었실.
Prog.	막히더이다	—	막히던.
Plup.	막히었더이다 ...	—	—
Cont. F. ...	막히겠더이다....	—	—
Prob. F. P.	막히었겠더이다.	—	—

	INF.	EQUALS.	SUP.
Volitive {1st Pers. Plur.	막히자,	막히세,	막히옵세다.
Mood. {2nd Pers....	막히어라,	막히게,	막히옵시오.

VERBAL NOUNS.	SUPINE.	BASES.
막힘.	막히러.	Neg. ....막히지.
막히기.		Desid. ...막히려.

VERBS WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

181.—While the matter of conjunctions should properly be left to the chapter on conjunctions ; they vary so much in their uniting with the verb, that a few words about them and their use is needed here. In use we find that some unite with the verb in the indicative, some join themselves to verbal participles, some to relative participles and some directly to the stem.

182.—The following list of some of the conjunctions that are most commonly used, divided into these classes should be learned.

1st. Those uniting with the tenses of the indicative mood :—

면, 거든	<i>If, when ; conditional.</i>
니	<i>Whereas ; causal and concessive.</i>
넋가, 니하, 니가니, 시간드로	<i>In as much as, seeing that, since, as ; marks the reason.</i>
매	
즉 preceded by √	
건대	
길니	<i>Because ; marks the cause.</i>
나	<i>Although, whether ; in part concessive.</i>

되	}	<i>Although, though ; concessive and in part disjunctive.</i>
거니와		
돌 preceded by √		
마는		<i>But, however ; disjunctive.</i>
거나		<i>Whether.</i>
거늘	}	<i>When, after, since ; temporal and causal.</i>
며		
고만, 고만, 고면...	}	<i>At the time that, while. Used in surprise, astonishment, blaming.</i>

Note.—With this last, **는** sometimes is used as a connective.

2nd. Uniting with verbal participles :—

도 *Though, although ; concessive.*

3rd. Uniting with relative participles.

지 *Whether.*

가 { *Whether, used also in soliloquies expressive of doubt.*

지라도 { *Even though, although, though ; concessive.*

되 { *When, while, whereas, though at the same time.*

고 { *Used in soliloquies expressive of doubt, or surprise.*

4th. Uniting with the stem.

고 *And.*

면서 *While. Signifies simultaneous action.*

There are some adverbs, interjections etc. that, uniting with the indicative tenses in the same way as conjunctions should be mentioned here.

As :—

고나 *Why !* Interjection expressive of surprise.

그리야 ... *Why !* Interjection expressive of surprise.

Note.—This is used *with* the verbal termination.

다가 *While ;* indicates an interruption.

노 { An exclamation of surprise or wonder
used in soliloquies.

Note.—This particle is in much more common use in the Province of Kyeng Sang Do. It is there used to either superiors or inferiors in asking questions.

183.—As will be noticed, those uniting with the indicative are most numerous. When the conjunction is affixed, as has already been remarked, the termination is dropped. This being done the conjunction unites itself directly with the verb, but euphony may make some changes. Conjunctions beginning with ㅍ, ㅑ and ㅓ, cannot unite themselves directly to stems or verbal forms ending in a consonant. A connective is needed and ㅓ or 이 is quite largely used for this purpose.

With the present indicative, there being no tense root, the conjunction unites directly with the verbal stem and the rule may hold that with all stems ending in a consonant other than ㄱ, ㄴ, or ㅁ, ㅓ will be used. Of course when there is a latent ㅎ, it will appear before the ㅓ. With those ending in ㄴ or ㅁ, often the final letter may be doubled or another consonant may enter in. The only rule that we can give in this matter is, that all verbs whose stems end in ㄴ and ㅁ, drop the final ㅍ of the past rel. part. and add the conjunction.

Verbs whose stems end in ㄹ are joined to conjunctions beginning with ㅁ directly, without any negative; and when joined to those beginning with ㅂ, the ㄹ is dropped.

As those ending in a vowel :—

오오 (to come), 오면 (if come), 오나 (although come).

자오 (to sleep), 자면 (if sleep), 자나 (although sleep).

주오 (to give), 주면 (if give), 주나 (although give).

쓰오 (to use), 쓰면 (if use), 쓰나 (although use).

Those ending in consonants other than ㅅ, ㅈ or ㄹ :—

먹소 (to eat), 먹으면 (if eat), 먹으나 (although eat).

죽소 (to die), 죽으면 (if die), 죽으나 (although die).

숨소 (to hide), 숨으면 (if hide), 숨으나 (although hide).

만소 (to be plentiful), 만하면 (if plentiful), 만하나 (although plentiful).

Those ending in ㅅ and ㅈ :—

받소 (to receive) R. P. 받은 then 받으면 (If receive) etc.

맞소 (to suit) ,, 맞춘 ,, 맞스면 (If suit) ,,

업소 (to be lacking) ,, 업슨 ,, 업스면* (If lacking) ,,

묻소 (to ask) ,, 무른 ,, 무르면 (If ask) ,,

듣소 (to hear) ,, 드룬 ,, 드르면 (If hear) ,,

Those ending in ㄹ :—

아오 (to know) Stem 알 ; 알면 (If know), 아나 (although know).

부오 (to blow) ,, 불 ; 불면 (If blow), 부나 (although blow).

노오 (to fly) ,, 놀 ; 놀면 (If fly), 노나 (although fly).

기오 (to be long) ,, 길 ; 길면 (If long), 기나 (although long).

With tenses other than the present, ending in a consonant, the connective is always 시.

*업시면 Is also largely used.

As :—

주었소,
(he gave).주었시면,
(if he gave).주었으나,
(although he gave).맞았소,
(it suited).맞았시면,
(if it suited).맞았으나,
(although it suited).가겠소,
(he will go).가겠시면,
(if he will go).가겠으나,
(although he will go).얻겠소,
(he will get).얻겠시면,
(if he will get).얻겠으나,
(although he will get).

184.—All other conjunctions, etc. unite themselves directly with the form of the verb without the aid of any connective.

As :—

가거든..... If he go.

들거든..... If he hear.

가겠거늘..... Since he will go.

들거나..... Whether he hear.

185.—In this place it will be well to give a few words on the

MEANINGS AND USES.

of some of these conjunctions.

면 and 거든. Both these conjunctions have a conditional force.

The first is simply conditional, and is rendered into English by *if*. It may be united with any one of the tenses simple or compound. When united to the simple tenses, we have simple supposition, but when, to the compound, it generally has the idea of supposition contrary to fact.

The second of these may be rendered into English by *when* or *if*. It gives to the conditional sentence a decided element of, not simple uncertainty, but doubt and improbability. It may often be translated by "*in case*," "*supposing that*."

말을 사면 소인교 는 If you buy a horse, there is
쓸데 업소. no need for a chair.

리일 김석방이 돈 가져 If Mr. Kim brings the
오면 그 집을 사겟소. money to-morrow; I will
buy that house.

알노 출 알았더면 내가 If I had known that he
보러 갔겟소. was sick I would have
gone to see him.

그 약을 먹엇더면 아니 If he had taken that
죽엇겟소. medicine, he would not
have died.

내가 알았더면 못 가게 If I had known, I would
흐엿겟소. have prevented his going.

지금 가더면 나도 가 If you were going now, I
겟소. too would go.

오늘 병이 낫거든 리일 I will go to-morrow if I
가겟다. should get better to-day.

편지 오거든 잘 봐야 If a letter should come
두어라. take care of it.

186.—너. This conjunction has been the source of much discussion because, at times, it was found giving a simple causal effect ; and then, again, without any apparent reason, implying opposition to something that follows, something unexpected.

On examination we find that the first sense always appears with the simple tenses ; and the second, with the compound.

ㄴ is then exactly equivalent to the English word *whereas*, which may have this dual idea and is used in the same connections. With simple tenses, ㄴ is equivalent to, *considering that, it being the case that, as, since* : with the compound, however, “*when in fact,*” “*while — on the contrary ;*” introducing something unexpected or it may at times introduce a result and mark the cause.

리일 공부 하겠시니 일즉 Come early to-morrow, as
오시오. we will study.

장소를 잘 하였시니 부자 Since he has been a success-
되었소. ful merchant, he is now
rich.

서울을 오늘 가겠더니 I was going to Seoul to-day
비가 와서 못 갔소. but it rained and I did
not.

집을 잘 지었더니 화재를 I built a good house but it
맞았소. took fire.

일본을 가려고 체물포 Intending to go to Japan I
까지 갔더니 비가 썩 went as far as Chemulpo,
나서 못 가고 도로 but, the boat had gone
왔소. and I could not, so came
back.

공부 잘 하더니 유명하 Because he studied hard
선비가 되었소. he became a renowned
scholar.

도적질 하더니 포교의게 He was arrested by the
잡혔소. police because he stole.

187.—**닛가** with its various modifications, **때**, **즉** preceded by **ㄴ**, and **건대**, all mark the reason, or that on account of which something is done.

The strongest of these is **즉** which is about the equivalent of the English word *because*.

그 하인이 일을 잘 하니
닛가 여러 해 집에
두었소. Since that servant works
well he has been in this
house many years.

아까 만히 먹었지 닛가
지금 또 못 먹겠소. As I eat heartily a little
while ago, I cannot eat
more now.

길이 멀매 로비가 만하야
쓰겠소. As the journey is a long
one, the traveling ex-
penses will be heavy.

짐이 무거오매 힘 있는
작군 을 불러라. As the load is heavy, call
a strong coolie.

갑시 비싼즉 살수 업소. I can not buy it, because
the price is high.

지금은 돈이 만흔 즉 빚
갚하야 쓰겠다. As I have plenty of money
now, I must pay my
debts.

건대 has a little more of a temporal sense, and may often almost be translated by a conditional clause.

다시 생각 하니 건대 그
일이 아니 되겠소. Since I have thought over
the matter again, that
affair will not succeed.

이 비단을 그 비단에
비하건대 이 비단은 대
단히 비싸오. After comparing this satin
with that, this is very
dear.

조선 말을 비하 보건대
대단이 어려울 듯하오. Now that I have tried the
study of Korean, I think
it will be extremely dif-
ficult.

188.—**길니**. This is a contraction of the ending of the verbal noun in **기**, with the postposition **에** and a form derived from the verb **이오** (*to be*). It signifies *because*, and shows that the action expressed by the verb that it governs, was the real cause of the action contained in the principal verb of a sentence. It is stronger than any of the conjunctions given in ¶, 186, and 187, as it marks a *result*, following from a cause.

그 놈이 공연이 내게 욕하
길니 욕에 가도았소. Because that fellow insult-
ed me without reason, I
had him locked up.

도적이 무섭길니 총을
가지고 다니오. Because I am afraid of
robbers I carry fire arms.

아까 비가 오길니 유삼
을 입었소. I put on my water proof,
because it was raining a
little while ago.

189.—**나** is equivalent to *though*, or *although*, and has a concessive force. It is also, used with verbs of *knowing*, *telling*, etc., where we would use the English word *whether*. In such cases, like the English word *whether*, it signifies the first of two or more alternatives, expressed or understood. If expressed, the same particle **나** is used to designate the other alternatives.

말은 잘 하나 일은 잘못
하오. He talks well enough, but
he cannot work well.

값은 적으나 보기는 토소. Though the price is small,
it looks well.

자나 마나 믿음 대로 하오. Sleep or not, suit yourself.

이 일은 죽으나 사나 할 거시오. You ought to do this whether you die or live.

190.—거니와, 티 (sometimes written 되), and 돌 preceded by ㅈ, may all be rendered by *though, although, as though, as if, however*, etc. They generally have a concessive force, but we quite often find them employed where in English we would use a disjunctive.

이 성전을 먹거니와 일홈은 모릅깃소. Although I eat this fish, I do not know its name.

총은 노았거니와 노로논 못 잡앗소. Though I fired off my gun, I did not get a deer.

고양이는 만흐티 쥐는 아니 잡소. Though there are plenty of cats, they do not catch the rats.

키논 크티 발은 적소. Though he is tall, his legs are short.

못쓰게 흥논 일은 만히 혼돌 무엇 흥깃노냐. Even though a man does a host of useless things, of what account is it?

죽은 후에 약을 가져온돌 쓸티 잇노냐. Even though you bring medicine, after a man is dead, is it any use?

191.—마논. This word, unlike most Korean conjunctions, refers more to what follows, than to what precedes it. It may consequently appear at times, at the beginning of a sentence, and at times we do find it also, standing alone at the end of a sentence. All such sentences are, however, incomplete. It may be ren-

dered into English by *but*, *however*, etc. In its union with the verb, the termination may be retained, or it may be replaced by 것.

Note.—In connection with this word, we should not forget that it is not much used by Koreans. They as a rule, prefer to use one of the concessive particles, and generally transpose the sentence and do so. At times they express the same idea by the use of the verbal noun in 기, with the post-position 는. See ¶ 173. It seems almost as though the Korean prefers to use any other phrase than this, and careful attention, will reveal the fact that 마는 is much more commonly used by foreigners, or Koreans with whom they are associated, than by Koreans generally.

A few illustrations of its use are given :—

토키는 토라 마는 잡시 It is good, but it is dear.
만다.

비는 온다 마는 가는 It is raining, but we had-
거시 토켓다. better go.

똥을 잡으러 가오 마는 I am going out to get a
잡을인지 모를것소. pheasant, but I do not
know whether I shall
succeed.

192.—거나. This conjunction may be rendered into English by *whether*, *or* ; or, when repeated, by *whether—or*. Like the 나 in its secondary use, of ¶ 189, it signifies one or more alternatives.

가거나 말거나 뭐음대로 Go or not, do as you wish.
홍오.

먹거나 굶거나 생각대로 Eat or starve, do as you
홍오. think best.

크거나 작거나 사오. Whether it is large or
small, buy it.

193.—거늘 signifying *when, after, since, as*, has both a temporal and causal effect. It is found for the most part in books, but may at times, though very rarely be used in conversation.

친구가 죽겠다 흥거늘 When they say a friend is
엇지 아니 갈수가 있소 dying how can one but
리오. go?

다른 사람의 말이 그 책 When some one else says
을 네가 가져 갔다 흥 that you took the book ;
거늘 엇지 네가 아니 how can you say you
가져 갔다 흥겠느냐. did not?

194.—며. This conjunction is simply connective and signifies *and*. Unlike its equivalent 고 which unites directly with the stem, 며 may unite with any one of the tenses and then replaces its termination.

밥을 먹으며 공부 할수 Can I eat and study (at the
있느냐. same time) ?

작란하며 공부를 엇더케 How can you both play
흥오. and study ?

언제 갔소며 언제 왔느냐. When did you go and
when did you come?

어느 시에 떠나 겠시며 Tell exactly, what time
어느 시에 도라올 거슬 you will go and at what
즈세히 말흥오. you ought to be coming
back.

195.—고먼, 고만, 고민. These are but three different forms which the same conjunction may assume. They may be rendered into English by — *at the time that, when, while, though at the same time, when in fact*, and are used in expressing surprise, astonishment, and in reproaching.

As a rule, they unite directly with the verb, after its termination has been dropped, but **는** may be used as a connective.

지금 비가 오^는 고^는 먼 아니 온다고 하^는다. Even now while the rain is coming down, do you say it does not rain?

네 집에 불 났고^는 먼 아니 가^는다. When your house is on fire, are you not going?

붓시 도쿄^는 먼 언^는 잘^는 타고 하^는오. Though the pencils are good, at the same time, he says they are bad.

김석방이 왔고^는 먼 업^는 다고 하^는엿소. Though Mr. Kim was in he said, he was out.

196.—도. This conjunction signifies, *though*, *although*, and has a concessive force, but is commonly only found united with the past verbal participle.

지금 가^도 그 사람 볼^수 는 업^소. Even though you go now you can not see that man.

잡^는 비^도 개^가 사^겟소. Though the price is high, I will buy.

고^군군은 왔^셔도 아^마 못 가^겟다. Even though the chair coolies have come, perhaps he will not go.

그 집^을 개^가 사^고 시^버도 돈^이 부족^하겟^소. Although I would like to buy that house, I can not afford it.

197.—지 and 가 are both used with relative participles and signify *whether*, *whether* — *or*, with verbs of

knowing and not knowing, etc. In uniting with the participles, except the future participle in ㄹ, they unite directly and no connective is needed. With this, however, ㄴ is needed as a connective. We find these conjunctions largely in use with those relative participles that are derived from the various simple and compound tenses by affixing ㄴ and ㅁ. Both these conjunctions are also largely used, (가 more frequently) in soliloquies, expressive of doubt and hesitation.

With reference to the word 고, it may be said that it also has this latter sense, and is used in the same way.

오늘 오는지 모르겠소. I do not know whether he will come to-day.

다 하였는지 무려 보아라. Ascertain whether he has finished.

집에 계신가 알고 오너라. Go and find out whether he is at home.

어제 왔는가 알수 업소. I can not tell whether he came yesterday.

리일 갈는지 모르겠소. I do not know whether I shall go to-morrow.

엇더케 하면 좋을가. How had I better do it?

일본 가서 사면 엇더할고. How would it be to go to Japan and buy it?

198.—지라도. This conjunction is found only with the regular future, and future past relative participles. It has the sense of *though*, *although*, *even though* etc., and is the strongest of the Korean concessives. With the future participle, it has a present and hence with the future past, a past sense.

다시 오라고 할지라도 Even though you tell him
아니 오겠소. to come again, he will
not.

약 먹을 지라도 죽겠소. Even though you take the
medicine, you will die.

어제 갔실 지라도 못 Although I went yesterday,
맞났소. I did not meet him.

199.—*티* is equivalent to *when*, *while*, *whereas*, *though at the same time*, and is joined to relative participles.

비가 오는 티 워 가오. Why are you going when
it is raining?

그 집을 잘 지었 는티 워 Whereas they built that
헐나고 호오. house well, why do they
want to pull it down?

티일은 손님이 만히 오 When there are a host of
겻는티 아모것 티접홀 friends coming to-mor-
거술 사지 아니 호엇 row, have you not bought
느냐. a thing with which to
entertain them?

200.—*고*. Like *며*, this conjunction is, as a rule, simply connective, and may be rendered into English by *and*.

Note.—This same connective may be affixed to any one of the tenses in the forms ending in *아*, and used with *호오*; it then gives us the regular form for indirect discourse.

불 끄고 자가랴. Put out the light and go
to sleep.

어제 가고 오늘 또 갔소. He went yesterday and
again to-day.

꽃도 피었고 일기도 또 As both the flowers are
흐나 형기 흐려 가옵 out, and the weather is
시다. fine, let us take a walk.

리일은 공수도 오겠고 As the Minister and the
독관 도 오겠시니 또흔 President of the Foreign
실과 사 오너라. Office are both coming
to-morrow; buy some
good fruit.

201.—고나 and 그리아 are both interjections expressive of surprise, and are used with the indicative tenses. With 고나 the termination is dropped; with 그리아, it is retained. It may be rendered into English by *why!* preceding the clause.

비가 어제 또 오더니 Why! It was raining yesterday and it is raining
오늘 또 오는 고나. again to-day.

어제 왔던 인희가 오늘 Why! The boy who came
또왔 고나. yesterday, has come
again to-day.

오늘 남풍이 종일 분즉 Why! It will rain again
리일 또 비가 오겠 to-morrow, for the South
고나. wind has been blowing
all day.

겨울에 꽃치 봄과 같으니 Why! It is wonderful that
이상호오 그리아. the flowers in winter are
like those of spring.

김석방이 어제 죽었소 Why! Mr. Kim died yesterday.
그리아.

바람이 대단 혼즉 큰 Since the wind is blowing
화제가 되겠소 그리아. so hard, it will indeed,
be a great conflagration.

202.—다가. Signifies *while, at the time that, when*, and implies an interruption. It is a conjunctive adverb, and may unite with any of the simple tenses of the indicative.

It may at times be rendered by *but*.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 서울 오다가 김석방을 만
났소. | I met Mr. Kim when I
was coming to Seoul. |
| 이 병을 일본 가다가
얻었소. | I got this disease when I
was going to Japan. |
| 미국 가려다가 아니 갔소. | I intended to go to Ameri-
ca, but did not. |
| 오늘 공사를 보려다가
못 보았소. | I intended to see the Minis-
ter to-day, but did not. |

203.—면서. This conjunctive adverb also signifies *while*, but it has the sense of simultaneous action, and indicates that the actions expressed by the dependent, and the principal verbs were carried on at the same time.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 책 보면서 담배 먹소. | He smokes, while he reads
his book. |
| 가면서 의론 하옵시다. | Let us consult about it,
while we are going. |
| 밥 먹으면서 편지
보겠소. | I will read the letter, while
eating. |
| 선생이 집에 가면서
학도들을 내게 맡겼소. | The teacher committed the
care of the scholars to
me, while he went home. |

이 집 주인이 서울 가 The owner of this house,
 면석 열쇠 를 내게 committed the key to
 맡겼소. my keeping, while he
 went to Seoul.

비 오 면석 바람이 부오. It blows while it rains.
 머리가 압흐 면석 비가 At the same time that my
 압흐오. head aches, my stomach,
 aches.

면석 with adverbs of time such as 곧; (*at once*) etc., has also the sense of, *as soon as*. For illustrations of this see Part II. Chap. VII, § III. Sec. 23, 3.

THE DESIDERATIVE VERB.

204.—The regular desiderative verb is formed by the use of the desiderative base with ㅎ오, which are generally connected by the connective 고. The 고 may, however, be dispensed with, and then still further contractions may take place.

When such desideratives are formed, they can be carried through the whole basal conjugation. They are equivalent to the English words *to desire to*, *to intend to*, *to want to*.

As :—

먹으라고 ㅎ오 To intend to eat.
 가라고 ㅎ오 To intend to go.
 자라고 ㅎ오 To intend to sleep.

205.—Another form of the desiderative may be obtained by the use of 고저 or 고자 affixed to the verbal stem, with ㅎ오.

In use these two are often interchangeable, and both signify, *desire, intention*.

The true distinction between these, is, that while the form in **려** or **랴** signifies rather *desire wish*, that in **저** or **쟈** has more the idea of *purpose, intent*.

지금 서울 의석씨 김씨	As I am at Seoul now, I
밤을 보고저 하오.	purpose seeing Mr. Kim.
미국 의실때 화륜선을	While I was in America, I
사고 저 하였소.	-intended buying a steam-boat.

조선 공사와 의론 하고저	I intend consulting with
하오.	the Korean Minister.

Further illustrations of both these desiderative forms will be found in Part II. Sec. 13 of Aux. Verbs.

NEGATIVES.

206.—There are in Korean two negatives, **안** or **아니**, and **못**. Both are simple negatives and may be rendered into English by *not*. **안**, however, always brings in the idea of the will of the subject; **못** on the other hand, generally conveys the idea of inability, and is used in negations that were brought about generally, without an act of the will of the subject of the verb. This distinction between **안** and **못** should not only always be recognized when listening to Koreans, but *must always* be observed in speaking. By a lack of discrimination in this matter, the most ludicrous mistakes often occur. These words may be used adverbially when they precede the verb they negate.

On account of the distinction mentioned above, **못** may often be rendered by the English *can not*.

지금 안 자오.	He is not sleeping now.
어제 안 갔소.	He did not go yesterday.
저녁은 안 먹겠소.	I will not take any supper.
오늘 못 켜나오.	I can not start to day.
아까 못 보았소.	I did not see you before.
후에론 못 오겠소.	I can not come afterwards.

207.—These same words may be united with **항오**, when they form negative verbs, and still maintain the distinction mentioned above.

When these negative verbs are used, they are preceded by the negative base of the verb they negate. Thus they give us a negative form of the principal verb. From the verb **밝소**, we have the negative base **밝지** which joined to the negative verb **아니 항오**, gives us **밝지 아니 항오**. But the **아니** and the **항오** may contract into **안소**; the **지** and the **안** into **잔** and we have then **밝 잔소** as the negative of the verb **밝소** (*to be bright*).

In like manner from any verb, a negative verb may be formed, which in turn, may be carried through the whole basal conjugation. In forming a negative from the negative base, with **못 항오**, from the nature of the case, contractions cannot occur.

NEGATIVES.

토소,	To be good,	토치 아니 항오	or 토찬소.
먹소,	To eat,	먹지 아니 항오	„ 먹잔소.
주오,	To give,	주지 아니 항오	„ 주잔소.
돈니오,	To walk,	돈니 지 아니 항오	„ 돈니잔소.
청가스 럽소,	To be bother- some,	{ 청가스럽지 아니 항오 }	{ 청가스럽 잔소.
죽소,			
	To die,	죽지 아니 항오	„ 죽잔소.

208.—The negative verb **마오** (*to avoid*) is much more used in Korean than its corresponding word in English. For the most part, it is found in commands, entreaties, exhortations not to do something. Like the other negative verbs, it is preceded by the negative base of the verb expressing the action to be avoided.

술 먹지 마오. Do not take wine.

작란 하지 마오. Do not play.

남 의게 해로운 일을 마오. Avoid injury to others.

209.—Certain verbs have corresponding negative forms, such as, *to want*, and *to refuse*; *to know* and *to be ignorant of*; and, where these exist, they are of course used in preference to the negative form that might be derived in the manner described above.

For example :—

호호호오. To like.	슬회여호오 To dislike.
아오 To know.	모르오 To be ignorant of.
크오 To be big.	적소 To be small.
높소 To be high.	낮소 To be low.
잇소 To exist.	업소 To be lacking.
먹소 To eat.	급소 To fast.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

210.—There are a number of verbs in Korean, which joining themselves to other verbs or parts of verbs, give not so much a double sense to the new verb thus formed, but a new sense, derived from the union of the two. These verbs have been termed *auxiliary* verbs, and while the term, thus used, does not signify the same as when used in most grammars, we see no reason to make a change.

Many of the verbs thus used as auxiliaries retain their original meaning throughout, and as a rule, a careful study of the auxiliary, and the form of the verb with which it is used will give an accurate understanding of the joint meaning of the two as used together.

In their use, we find that they are joined sometimes, to the verbal participles, sometimes, directly to one or other of the simple tenses, sometimes another particle is interposed, and sometimes they are joined to the relative participle. One and the same verb, may act as auxiliary in all these ways. The greater number, however, are joined to the verbal participles.

211.—The following is a list of the most common, divided into classes, according to their method of uniting with the verb :—

1st. Those united to the verbal participle :—

있소.....	To be.	되오.....	To become.
오오.....	To come.	두오.....	To leave.
가오.....	To go.	지오.....	To grow.
보오.....	To see.	주오.....	To give.
죽항오 preceded by 口,	To be worthy.	항오.....	To do.

2nd. Joined to verbal tenses :—

보오, *connected by* 가, (to see).

3rd. Joined to relative participles :—

보오, *connected by* 가, (to see).

십소, *connected by* 가, (to want).

4th. Joined to the stem :—

있소, *connected by* 고, (to be).

십소, *connected by* 고, (to want).

스럽소, (to be worthy of).

녁이오, (to regard as).

These are but a few of the auxiliaries in common use ; and, as has already been said, an exact rendering of them, with the connecting particles and the verb they join, will always give the meaning to be conveyed. A few words, however, about some of them will illustrate this and aid the student.

212.—오오, 가오, and 지오. The first two verbs are affixed to verbal participles, and mark the movement, *here* or *there*, as the case may be. 가오 is also affixed to neuter verbs, signifying that the state expressed by the neuter verb is gradually and constantly increasing ; and 지오 has this same sense. These verbs then, correspond to what in Latin are known as "*Inceptives*."

내리오 To lower, 내려오오 To come down, 내려가오 To go down.
오르오 To raise, 올라오오 To come up, 올라가오 To go up.

밝소 To be bright, 밝아가오 To grow bright.

검소 To be black, 검어지오 To grow black.

늙소 To be old, 늙어가오 To grow old.

213.—보오 (*to see*) may be found used as an auxiliary, united either with a verbal participle, or with a relative participle, or with a simple tense.

1st. United with a verbal participle ; no connective is needed, and the verb 보오 generally then has the sense of, *to try*. But, at times, it and the verb for which it acts as an auxiliary, may be rendered into English by one word.

먹어보오, "Eating to try" *to taste*.

무러보오, "Asking to see" *to inquire*.

베혀보오, "Cutting to try" *to try to cut*.

214.—2nd. United with the relative participles, or with a simple tense, with 가 and 나 respectively as connectives, it signifies *probability*, *likelihood*. This sense comes naturally from a literal translation, and 간가보오, *lit.* “Gone looks,” means “It looks as though he has gone,” or “He has probably gone.” Again 비오 겿나보오, *lit.* “Rain will come though it looks,” means “It looks as though rain will come,” or “It will probably rain.”

오늘은 썩나논 가 보오. He probably starts to-day.

석육석 왔논 가 보오. He has probably come from Seoul.

리일은 먹겿논 가 보오. He will probably eat it to-morrow.

너름에 비가 만히 오니
홍년 되겿나 보오. As there is a good deal of rain this summer, it will probably be a year of plenty.

석탄이 적으니 불이 쏘지
겿나 보오. As there is but a little coal the fire will probably go out.

안경 쓰면 그 책을 보겿
나 보오. If you put on your glasses you can probably read that book.

215.—족향오 preceded by 口, is united with the verbal participle, past or future, and signifies, *to be worthy of*—.

This was the original and true meaning of the word, but we find it to-day, used also in the sense of *possibility*, and even *probability*.

Note.—The auxiliary, here used giving what we might call a future sense to the verb with which it is used, may be employed interchangeably with the future or past participle, though the past is the more frequent.

216.—스럽소. This auxiliary also has the meaning of “*to be worthy of*”; and is joined with the verbal noun, or any abstract noun. It may also be joined to the preceding auxiliary, replacing **호오**. When so used the meaning is unchanged.

217.—삽소. This word may be used either with the verbal stem, or with the relative participle.

1st. Used with the verbal stem, **고** is interposed as a connective, and **고삽소** may then be rendered into English by “*I want to*” “*I desire to.*”

가고 삽소. To want to go.

자고 삽소. To want to sleep.

먹고 삽소. To want to eat.

2nd. Used with the rel. part., **가** or **듯** or **듯**, must be interposed as a connective.

So used **삽소** indicates strong probability, and shows that while the subject of the verb, does not know for a certainty, yet he has strong reason to believe, that the action or state contained in the verb to which **삽소** acts as an auxiliary, is a fact.

몸이 대단히 압하 못살 I am in great pain and
듯 삽소. probably can not live.

로형이 오지 못 할 가 You will most probably
삽소. not come.

집이 잘 못 될듯 삽소. I do not think the house
will be a good one.

티일은 갈듯 삽소. I shall probably go to-
morrow.

218.—주오 (*to give*) used as an auxiliary, gives the sense of *doing for another*, either as a favor, or in rendering aid. It may often be rendered into English by *let, have, make, get.*

공부 잘 하게 하여 주오. Make it so that I can
study well.

병을 낫쳐 주오. Cure the disease for me.

이 책을 바꾸어 주오. Change this book for me.

붓 하나 사 주오. Buy a pencil for me.

219.—되오 (*to become*). This auxiliary is seldom used except with the future verbal participle. Used with active verbs it signifies that *circumstances are in a position for the carrying out of the action contained in the verb with which it is used*.

음식이 먹게 되오. The food is ready for eat-
ing.

병이 죽게 되오. The disease is unto death.

그 사람이 가게 되오. That man is so that he
can go.

220.—Further modifications of the verb, expressing *probability, possibility, pretension, duty*, etc., are formed by the use of the relative participles qualifying nouns such as *뜻* (*reason*), *것* (*thing*), *일* (*work*), *체* (*manner*), together with *호*, *소* or *이오*. These have come into so general a use, that they have been regarded almost as new verbs. They can, like any other verbs, be carried thorough the whole conjugation, after the basal form given above. A thorough understanding, however, of the use of each word is sufficient, though in all these we must not forget the distinctive meanings of *호*, *소*, and *이오*.

These three verbs are more used than any others in the changing and modifying of other verbs and in the making of new verbs from nouns, etc.

ㅎ오 has the sense of *to do, to make* and is joined to a number of nouns and adjectives which of course then become corresponding verbs. It may at times have the sense of the English *to have*. Its negative will be **아니ㅎ으**, or **안소**, or **못ㅎ오**.

있소 which has been commonly considered the equivalent of the English *to be*, has truly the idea of *to exist*; and may often be rendered by the English *to have, to dwell, to live, to be in*, etc. It is, then, only equivalent to the "*to be*" of English where it predicates the existence or presence of its subject. Its negative is **없소** *to be lacking, to be not present, to be non-existent*.

이오, on the other hand, predicates something other than "existence" or "presence" of its subject, and is not used independently. It always has another noun or pronoun with it as a predicate and may be rendered by some form of *to be*, though it can never stand as the equivalent of *to have, to dwell, to live, or to be in*. Its negative is **아니오**. It is often contracted into **요** and **오**.

Examples of the distinctive use of these two will be found in Part II. Chapter I. § I. 1 and 2.

These distinctions must never be lost sight of; for, while in many places, although used interchangeably, the same idea could not but be present; it would not only be extremely inelegant to use one where the other ought to be employed, but, in the eyes of the Korean, very ludicrous. In not a few cases also a wrong impression would be given.

221.—The following list of the nouns most commonly so used will explain this.

수 (means)	with	힘소.....	} All signify <i>ability</i> . Rendered into English by <i>can, could</i> , etc.
만 (ability)	„	힘오.....	
법 (law)	„	힘소.....	
수 (means)	with	업소.....	} Signify <i>inability</i> . Ren- dered into English by <i>cannot, could not</i> , etc.
만 (ability)	„	못힘오.....	
법 (law)	„	업소.....	
것 (thing)	} with	힘오.....	} Signify <i>duty</i> . Rendered into English by <i>should ought</i> etc.
더 (place)			
일 (work)			
것 (thing)	} with	아니오.....	} Signify simply that the obligation <i>does not</i> <i>exist</i> .*
더 (place)			
일 (work)			
것 (thing)	} with	업소	} Signifies simply <i>there is no</i> <i>reason to</i> .
일 (work)			
변 (time)	with	힘오.....	} Signifies <i>to be on the point</i> <i>of, to just miss</i> .
이 (semblance)	with	힘오...	} Signifies <i>pretense</i> and may be rendered into English by, <i>to pretend, to feign</i> .
모양 (manner)	with	힘오...	} Signifies <i>appearance</i> , and may be rendered by, <i>it</i> <i>seems, it appears</i> .
듯	} with	힘오 or 힘소.....	} Signify <i>probability</i> .
듯			
분	} with	힘오	} These two in use, are ex- clusive, and may be rendered into English, by, <i>it is only</i> .
씩			

* Note.—These cannot then be rendered into English by *ought not* and *should not*, which can only be rendered by the negation of the verb which these auxiliaries accompany. For instance — *갈것아니오* does not mean “*I should not go*,” but that “*I am under no obligation to go*.” On the other hand, *아니 갈거시오* “*I ought not to go*.”

것(thing) } with accus. postpos. { Signify certain know-
 출(affair) } and 아오. { ledge.

것(thing) } with instru. postpos. { Signify something not
 출(affair) } and 아오..... { known for a fact, but
 simply an opinion.

222.—A few words on the most important of these, with illustrations of their uses are necessary.

수, 만, and 법 are for the most part, used with the future part. of the verb, to signify *ability*, or *inability*, and a past is generally rendered by the past tense of 호오, or 업소.

Note.—The 만 often has the effect of the English terminative, *able* after a verb or noun, meaning *suitable for*, *fit*, *worthy of*, etc.

돈이 적은즉 물 살수 업소. As I am short of money I can not buy a horse.

도희가 업시니 편지 쓸수 업소. As I have no paper, I can not write a letter.

그 글씨가 큰즉 볼수잇소. As those characters are large I can see them.

이붓손 쓸만 호오. I can use this pen.

그 책이 볼 만 호오. That is a readable book.

어제 썬났으니 맛날수 업섯소. As he left yesterday I was not able to meet him.

아까 노래는 드를만 호엿소. That song of a little while ago, was worth hearing.

비 아니면 바다를 건널 법이 업소. If one does not have a boat, he can not cross the sea.

약이 잇섯더면 그병을 곳칠 법이 잇섯소. If I had some medicine I could cure that disease.

223.—것, ㄹ, and 일, when used to signify *duty*, are generally preceded by the future participle in ㄹ and can be rendered by “*ought to*,” or *should*.” A past sense is, strange to say, generally expressed by the use of the past of ㅅ. These same auxiliary nouns, preceded by the future past participle, give us the English “*ought to have*,” of strong conviction.

그책 내가 볼 거시오. I ought to read that book.

티월에 내가 송도로 갈 거시오. I ought to go to Song Do next month.

그 하인은 진실 할터시오. That servant ought to be honest.

편지논 로형이 쓸일이오. You ought to write the letter.

배가 어제 체물코 왔실 거시오. The boat must have reached Chemulpo yesterday.

열두 시가 지났 시니 그 사람 이 갔실 터시오. As it is past twelve that man must have gone.

어제 브즈런이 흥였더면 다 되었실 일시오. If you had been energetic it would have been finished yesterday.

224.—번, This word with ㅎ preceded by a future participle, signifies to be on the *point of*, to *just miss*, to *almost accomplish* the act of the principal verb.

도적 만나 죽을번 ㅎ였소. I met with thieves and came near losing my life.

가다가 돌 우회쳐 너머 질번 ㅎ였소. As I was going I almost fell over a stone.

225.—모양 (*appearance*) may be used with any one of the relative participles and may be rendered into English by “*it appears*,” or “*it seems as though*,” with a present, past, or future verb, as the case may be.

지금 클뵈는 모양 이오. He seems to be reading now.

아까 간 모양 이오. He seems to have gone some little while ago.

리일 비가 또 올 모양 이오. It seems as though it will rain again to morrow.

226.—ㄷ and ㄹ with ㅎ오 may be used with any one of the relative participles, giving us the sense of *probability*. They may be rendered into English, by the adverb *probably*, with a present, future, past, or future-past tense, as the case may be.

지금 자는 듯 ㅎ오. He is probably sleeping now.

발석 갔실 듯 ㅎ오. He will probably have gone already.

장차 올 듯 ㅎ오. He will probably come soon.

227.—The relative participle is also used with certain other words which have an adverbial force, such as **때**, **적**, (*time*); **사이**, or **식** (*space*); etc., to signify *when*, *while*, and the like. **수록** with the fut. rel. part. has the sense of *the more—the more*, and may sometimes be followed by **더욱**, having the same sense.

편지 쓸 때 손님이 와소. While I was writing a visitor came.

서울 외셋실 때 그 사람과 친 하였소.	While I was living in Seoul I was quite friend- ly with that man.
미국 갈 때 혼자지로 가겠소.	When you go to America I will go with you.
책 볼 적에 소리치지 마오.	Do not make a noise while I am reading.
부산 갔실 적에 붓을 사왔소.	When I went to Fusan I bought the pencils.
공부 할 적에 쓸 도화오.	It is paper to be used when studying.
밥 먹을 사이 침방에 도적이 드러왔소.	While we were eating, a thief came into the bed room.
바람이 불 수록 불이 너러나오.	The more the wind blows the greater the fire.
또한 노래는 드를 수록 듣고 싶소.	The more good songs I hear the more I want to hear.

THE VERB IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

228.—The verb, *to say*, *to speak*, is formed from 말 (*speech*) and 함오 (*to make*) but in telling what another has said, both of these words are not commonly used. The 말 is generally dropped, and 함오 alone employed; but joined to the verb, signifying the word spoken, by the conjunction 고. This form however, is only used with tenses ending in 아, of the indicative, when the termination is still retained and 고후오, simply affixed.

In the affirmative forms, the distinction between the inferior, and superior is almost lost sight of, this distinction being plainly shown by the termination of the **호오** signifying *to say*. Quite often the **고** is elided and then contractions almost unlimited, may follow.

집은 맛하 짓논 다고 호오. He says that he has contracted to build the house.

이 약을 먹은 후에 효험이 있섯다고 호엿소. He said that after taking this medicine the effect was good.

쉬이 오겟다고 호옵더 이다. He said he would come soon.

가겟다고 호엿 것 마논 아니 갓소. He said he would go but he did not.

229.—By the use of this rule for indirect discourse, an imperative verb has been formed. The low form of the termination of the volitive mood, second person, has been contracted into **라** and **라고호오** gives us the imperative verb “*to command to,*” *to order to.*” Here also the **고** may be dropped giving us **라호오** which may be contracted into **래오**.

이 북치논 김석방을 주라고 호오. Give this fan to Mr. Kim.

평양 갈 때에 집 잘 보라 고 호엿소. He ordered his house to be well watched while he was gone to Pyeng Yang.

화덕에 석탄을 너호 Tell him to put some coal
래오. in the stove.

이 상 못 쓰겠시니 다시 As this table will not do
곳치 래오. tell him to make it over
again.

CONTRACTED AND ELLIPTICAL FORMS.

230.—Having seen from the very beginning, the Korean's desire to shorten every thing as much as possible and to use as few words as absence of ambiguity will allow ; we are prepared to find that, with a verb that can undergo such changes, and employ such auxiliaries (for in fact almost everything in the whole language can be made to serve the verb), there will be various and numerous contractions and ellipses that have lost almost all resemblance to that from which they have been contracted.

We are also prepared to find that there are idioms phrases and *bon mots* not to be comprehended at first sight. A careful study of all these should be made.

While no attempt can be made here to give all these contractions, etc. a few words concerning some of the most common will enable the student to see their method of formation, and hereafter to analyze them for himself.

231.—In the following list a few of these are described and their use explained.

The Koreans are very prone to the use of contrasts, and owing to this fact, we find a number of elliptical phrases and contractions arising from the use of the

verb **마오** (*to avoid*) in connection with other verbs, active or neuter.

Various conjunctions are employed and decide the special meaning to be given. Other contractions, etc., are made from the use of other words and conjunctions ; and, for the sake of reference to the examples and illustrations given below, we have marked them (a), (b), (c), etc.

(a) Forms arising from the use of the conjunction **지** (*whether*), and **마오** (*to avoid*).

Various forms with these two words are derived by the use of the present, past, or future relative participles. They all give us an idea of doubt as to result. With a present participle, it generally signifies that the action expressed by the principal verb, while continuing, and at the time progressing, is progressing in such a way, that the desired result will not be obtained, or will be obtained to so slight an extent as to be useless.

With a past participle, it conveys the idea, that while the action is completed, the result is such, that it might equally well, have been left undone. With a future participle, it implies, not so much a doubt as to the result, as an entire ignorance as to what it will be. With **호오**, the forms will be :—

하노지 마노지.

흔지 만지.

홀지 말지.

They may be followed or not by **호오**, with no change. That which is here left to be understood is some form or part of the verb **것호오**, *to be the same*.

232.—(b.) The conjunction **ㄴ** or **고**, used with **마오**.

Either of these conjunctions affixed to the verbal stem, of the principal verb of the sentence, and immediately followed by the verbal stem of **마오** with the same conjunction, gives the idea of *positive certainty*, *beyond the shadow of a doubt*, as to the carrying out of the action, or the existence of the state, expressed by the principal verb. The idea seems to be that the state or act being certain, needs no comment and is beyond question.

We have then the forms :—

$\begin{array}{l} \text{ㅎ ㄴ 마 ㄴ}^* \\ \text{ㅎ 고 말 고} \end{array} \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{" I will certainly do it."} \\ \text{" Of course I will do it ;"} \end{array} \right\}$

(There need be no question about it).

높 고 말 고 “ It is undoubtedly high ”

(There is no question about its height).

233.—(c.) The interrogative particle **가** with **마오**.

The particle **가**, affixed to the principal verb, and immediately followed by the verbal stem of **마오** with **가**, is largely used in soliloquies, and, as will be seen at a glance, implies indecision on the part of the speaker, as to whether the action or state of the principal verb is a fact or not. It may or may not precede a form of the verb **ㅎ오**. When it does not precede **ㅎ오** it is

* Note.—The conjunction **ㄴ** beginning with **ㅍ**, when affixed to the verbal stem of **마오** which ends in **ㄴ**, according to the rule given above, causes the **ㄴ** to be dropped, and **말ㄴ** becomes **마ㄴ**.

almost entirely restricted to soliloquies. When preceding **호오**, it signifies that the subject of the verb, is at present considering the advisability of carrying out the action of the principal verb, but is as yet undecided.

234.—(d.) The particle **동** used with **마오**.

Various forms of the verb are derived from the use of this particle, with a present, past, or future relative participle. At times these forms are used interchangeably with those derived from the conjunction **지** (*whether*), given above ¶ 231. The distinction between the two is, that where **지** expresses doubt, **동** expresses an entire lack of concern or interest, in the result. It may or may not precede an accompanying verb, or a form of **호오**.

When **호오** is used, some part of the verb **것호오** (*to be the same*), is understood. With a past participle, it gives the idea of the entire failure of the object. With **호오**, the forms are :—

호는동 마는동.

호동 만동.

홀동 말동.

235.—(e.) The form derived from **낙** with **마오**.

This form with **호오** is, **홀낙 말낙 호오**, and **낙** has been regarded by some, as a separate particle or conjunction, used with the future relative participle. It implies lack of interest or relish of the subject of the principal verb, in the action. He *does a little and stops a little*. It is rather a contraction of the desiderative forms of the principal verb, and **마오**, with the adverbial conjunction **다가** which it will be remembered gives the

idea of interruption. The full form with **ㅎ오** then is :—

ㅎ랴 ㅎ다가 마랴 ㅎ다가, and gives the idea that, at first he did as though he intended to work, and then as though he intended not to work.

The contraction arises, first, by dropping the **다가**, and **ㅎ랴가** becomes from euphony **홀낙**.

Note.—The **ㅍ**, following the **ㄱ**, is but the Korean method of doubling **ㄱ**.

236.—(f.) The form in **고 지고**.

A much used form of the verb, is derived by affixing **고 지고** to the verbal stem. It gives us then the idea of something much desired or longed for, and may be translated by, “would that—,” “oh! that—.”

237.—(g.) Exclamation in **ㅌ**.

An exclamation expressive of fear or danger, and calling out to the one addressed to take care, is derived from the use of the future participle with **ㅌ**. It may or may not be followed by some such verb as, to take care. The *idea*, however, of calling upon the party addressed to be careful is always present.

As :—

너머질ㅌ, “You will fall!”

The same form may be used with the verb **보오**, (to see) implying strong probability.

238.—(h.) The desiderative form in **랴**, is we find often changed in the same manner as was seen above under (e.), and **ㅎ랴** may become **홀낙**, and **ㅎ랴고** **홀낙고**. Such a form as this, must then be rendered

in the same way as the simple desiderative. From this form with the verb **이오** (*to be*), is derived the phrase in **냐고요**, which for convenience we may then consider formed from the future participle. It may be translated by, “Do you think that”—“Do you for a moment suppose that—,” and signifies a positive negation.

239.—(i.) The form in **니**.

The phrase derived from the use of the future participle with this, gives the equivalent of the English potential past perfect, with a disjunctive or concessive force. It may be translated by “would have, but—” “should have, but—” etc.

The full phrase would be.

할 일 일니 니.

which is the future relative participle qualifying **일** (*work*), which is the subject of the irregular form of the progressive tense of the verb **이오** (*to be*), to which has been affixed the conjunction **니**.

240.—(j.) The last of these contractions of which we shall speak, are derived from the desiderative base. They are **하렘 하려무나**, and **하렘 다고나**. They are all used in commands where the person commanding is enraged at the neglect of a former order, or well known duty. **하렘** is a contraction of the colloquial **하려** (*do you intend to*) and **무엇** (*what*), with some such phrase as “are you doing?” etc., understood. It may be translated by “Do you intend to—” “Why don’t you?” etc., **하려무나** is a less complete contraction of the same form.

허럽다고나 is a contraction of.

허려 무엇 한다 고나.

or “Do you intend to? Why what are you doing?”

This last is much stronger than either of the other two, and extremely colloquial. It may be rendered into English by some such phrase as “Why on earth don't you?” “Why under the sun don't you?,” All these three phrases are expressive of irritation, annoyance, anger.

241.—The following sentences will illustrate these forms, and while the above are not by any means all that might be given, it is hoped that they are sufficient to give the student an insight into them and enable him to make further investigations for himself.

(a)

목수가 돈이 적다고 일을	The carpenter complains
하느지 마느지 하고	that the compensation
가오.	is small, and does his
	work so that it will be
	useless.

정신 업는 이 의게 말을	As I told it to a man who
흔즉 알아듣느지 마느	had no brains I doubt
지 하옵더 이다.	whether he understood.

오늘은 손님이 만히 와	As we have studied so
공부를 조금 하였으니	little to-day on account
흔지 만지 하오.	of so many callers, we
	might as well not have
	studied at all.

비가 적게 왔으니 온지	As so little rain came, it is
만지 하오.	of no account.

장사를 혼숙 룡소는 할지 말지 호오. As I have been a merchant, it is doubtful whether I can farm.

(b)

리가 만흐면 하니 마니 호 겿소. If there is plenty of profit, I will certainly do it.

열량 출 책을 스물 량을 주 었시니 잘 못 사니 마니. As you have given twenty nyang for a ten nyang book, you certainly have not bought well.

은희가 어른 의게 욕 호였시니 잘 못 호고 말고 말 할 것 업소. As it was a boy who insulted a man he certainly did wrong; and nothing more need be said about it.

잇흘을 클머시니 먹는 거시 도쿄 말고. As I have been fasting for two days, something to eat is undoubtedly good.

(c)

공부 를 혼숙 책 번역을 할가 말가 생각 호오. As I am studying I am thinking whether to translate the book or not.

조선에 잇소면 할 일이 만코 미국 가면 불일 적은즉 갈가 말가 호오. As there is plenty of work in Korea, and not much to do in America, I do not know whether to go or not.

이 하인이 일은 잘 하여도 Though this servant works
말은 잘 아니 드룬즉 well, as he does not
보낼가 말가. attend to what is said,
 shall I discharge him
 or not?

(d)

을 히는 집 곳치는 일을 I do not care whether I
할동 말동 하오. repair the house this
 year or not.

오늘 비가 만히 온즉 As it is raining hard I
김씨방이 올동 말동 doubt whether Mr. Kim
하오. will come to-day.

이번 장수 예는 리 한 As I have not made a
푼 업시니 한동 만동 penny by this transac-
하오. tion, I might just as well
 not have done it.

오늘 아침은 조금 먹었 As I ate only a little this
시니 먹은동 만동 morning it is as though
하오. I had eaten nothing.

돈이 적어 장수를 크게 I do not care whether I
못 한즉 한동 만동 engage in business or
하오. not, as I have but a
 little money and cannot
 do so on a large scale.

오늘 밤에 일이 만하 반시 As on account of the press
동안 을 잤더니 잔동 of work I only slept for
만동 하오. half an hour last night,
 I might as well not have
 slept at all.

(e)

이사이 몸이 압하 일을 Lately on account of pain
할낙 말낙 하오. I work a little and stop
 a little.

음식이 비위에 합지 아니 As the food does not suit
 혼즉 먹 을 낙 말 낙 I eat without relish.
 호요.

(f)

그 일을 어서 호고 지고. Would that we could do
 that work quickly.

병이 급하니 의원을 급히 As the disease is pressing,
 보고지고. would that I could see
 the doctor soon.

(g)

일을 잘 못 할나 조심호 You will not do it well;
 여라. take care.

가시 목에 걸닐 나. A bone will stick in your
 throat ! Be careful.

목수가 리일은 일 할나 The carpenter will proba-
 보오. bly work to-morrow.

약을 만히 먹어도 병이 Even though I have taken
 더하니 죽을 나보오. lots of medicine, as the
 disease is worse I will
 probably die.

(h)

그 거슨 의다가 할나고 I intended to do that later.
 생각 호였소.

이 거슨 너 줄나고 I bought this to give to
 사왔다. you.

어제 아니 혼다고 호였 When he said he would
 시니 오늘은 할나고요. not do it yesterday, do
 you think he will do it
 to-day.

물 에 드러 가면 죽을나 Do you think I want to
고요. go into the water and
drown?

(i)

이 일을 잘 할너니 돈이 I would have done this
부족하야 잘 못 하였소. well, but there was not
enough money and I
could not.

내 죽을 너니 명의를 만나 I should have died had
살았소. I not met a renowned
doctor who healed me.

(j)

그소 이 작란 만히 하였 As you have played a good
시니 지금은 공부 좀 while now, do you not
하렘. intend to study a little?

서울 가겠시니 고군군을 As I am going to Seoul,
브 르렘. why have you not called
coolies?

그 러께 아니 되거든 If it will not do that way,
이러케 하려무나. do it this way.

물이 먹기 슬켜든 차를 If you will not drink water,
먹으 려무나. why do you not take
tea?

너저브리거든 찾고 생각 If you have forgotten why
하렘다 고나. on earth do you not try
and think of it?

일 하기 슬켜든 가렘 If you will not work why
다고나. under the sun do you
not go?

242.—The principal parts of some of the verbs most commonly used are given below.

	Present Indicative.	Past Verbal Part.	Future Verbal Part	Past Rel. Part.
To sit.....	안소.....	안자.....	안게.....	안존
To put up.....	연소.....	연저.....	연게.....	연존
To be lacking ..	업소.....	업서.....	업게.....	업슨
To be.....	잇소.....	잇서.....	잇게.....	잇슨
To fit.....	맞소.....	마자.....	맞게.....	마존
To complete.....	못소.....	못차.....	못게.....	못존
To forget	잊소.....	니저.....	잊게.....	니존
To take off	벗소.....	버서.....	벗게.....	버슨
To wash	씻소.....	씻서.....	씻게.....	씻슨
To be frequent..	찾소.....	자자.....	찾게.....	자존
To be wet.....	젖소.....	저저.....	젖게.....	저존
To follow after..	좃소.....	좃차.....	좃게.....	좃존
To drive	쫓소.....	쫓차.....	쫓게.....	쫓존
To look for.....	찾소.....	차자.....	찾게.....	차존
To find				
To be disgusting.	아니썩소	아니썩와	아니썩게	아니썩온
To be beautiful ..	아름답소	아름다와	아름답게	아름다운
To itch	가렵소...	가려워...	가렵게...	가려온
To be light	가벼웁소	가벼워...	가벼웁게	가벼운
To be droll.	가소롭소	가소로워	가소롭게	가소로운
To be minute ...	싸다롭소	싸다로워	싸다롭게	싸다로운
To be ticklish ...	간지럽소	간지러워	간지럽게	간지러운
To be near	갓갑소...	갓가워...	갓갑게...	갓가온
To be vexatious..	고롭소...	고로워...	고롭게...	고로운
To be heavy	무겁소...	무거워...	무겁게...	무거운
To be dirty'	더럽소...	더러워...	더럽게...	더러운
To be repugnant.	증그럽소	증그러워	증그럽게	증그러운

	Present Indicative.	Past Verbal Part.	Future Verbal Part.	Past Rel. Part.
To mend	잡 소.....	기 워.....	잡 게.....	기 운
To lie down	눅 소.....	누 워.....	눅 게.....	누 운
To deplore	끓 소.....	셜 워.....	끓 게.....	셜 운
To be hot	더 읍 소...	더 워.....	더 읍 게...	더 운
To be cold	춍 소.....	치 워.....	춍 게.....	치 운
To know	아 오.....	알 아.....	알 게.....	안
To freeze... ..	어 오.....	얼 어.....	얼 게.....	언
To open	여 오.....	열 어.....	열 게.....	연
To draw	잇 그 오...	잇 그 러...	잇 클 게...	잇 근
To be lonely.....	왓 짜 오...	왓 짜 러...	왓 쌀 게...	왓 싯
To be dry	감 으 오...	감 으 러...	감 을 게...	감 은
To hang	거 오.....	거 러.....	걸 게.....	건
To promenade ..	건 이 오...	건 이 러...	건 할 게...	건 인
To go afoot	것 소.....	거 러.....	것 게.....	거 룬
To be long	기 오.....	기 러.....	길 게.....	긴
To raise.....	길 드 오...	길 드 러...	길 들 게...	길 든
To avoid	마 오.....	말 아.....	말 게.....	만
To make	몬 드 오...	몬 드 러...	몬 들 게...	몬 둔
To be far	머 오.....	머 러.....	멀 게.....	먼
To stay	머 므 오...	머 므 러...	머 물 게...	머 문
To suck.....	쌔 오.....	쌔 아.....	쌔 게.....	쌔
To pray.....	비 오.....	비 러.....	빌 게.....	빈
To undo	꾸 오.....	꾸 러.....	물 게.....	쭈
To load	싯 소.....	시 러.....	싯 게.....	시 룬
To make a noise.	썩 드 오...	썩 드 러...	썩 들 게...	썩 든
To lift	드 오.....	드 러.....	들 게.....	든
To hear.....	듯 소.....	드 러.....	듯 게.....	드 룬
To be round.....	둥 그 오...	둥 그 러...	둥 게.....	둥 근

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ADJECTIVE.

243.—Adjectives have been divided into two general classes, Limiting, and Qualifying. Limiting adjectives under the head of Numerals, and Pronominal Adjective have already been treated. Qualifying adjectives then, alone remain to be considered here. As has already been said, there are very few Korean words that can be termed true adjectives. Those that exist to-day were originally nouns, and by far the greater part, have been derived from the Chinese. Such adjectives always precede the words they qualify, and of course the rule for the use of Sinico-Korean and pure Korean words holds here also. A Sinico-Korean Adjective must qualify a Sinico-Korean noun, and a pure Korean adjective its corresponding noun.

대, Great.	대풍, A great wind.
소, Little.	소인, A little man.
백, White.	백마, A white horse.
황, Yellow.	황금, Yellow Gold.
상, Low.	상놈, A low fellow.

244.—By far the greater number of so called Korean adjectives are neuter verbs, and the past, or perfect relative participle is commonly used as the adjectival form. Used predicatively the verbal form will be employed; used attributively the participial. These neuter verbs can be carried through the whole basal conjugation. When the participial form is used, it precedes the noun qualified; when the verbal, the noun qualified, of course, precedes the adjective. The following list of predicative and attributive forms will illustrate this.

VERB.		ADJECTIVE.
높소.....	To be high.	높은..... High.
낮소.....	To be low.	낮은..... Low.
춥소.....	To be cold.	추운..... Cold.
더웁소.....	To be hot.	더운..... Hot.
올소.....	To be right.	올른..... Right.
그르오.....	To be wrong.	그른..... Wrong.
가깝소.....	To be near.	가까운..... Near.
먼오.....	To be far.	먼..... Far.
강하오.....	To be hard.	강한..... Hard.
유하오.....	To be soft.	유한..... Soft.
익소.....	To be ripe.	익은..... Ripe.
생오.....	To be unripe.	생..... Unripe.
어둡소.....	To be dark.	어두운..... Dark.
밝소.....	To be light.	밝은..... Light.
넓소.....	To be broad.	넓은..... Broad.
좁소.....	To be narrow.	좁은..... Narrow.

245.—The Korean adjective being thus really a verb, admits of a great variety of forms of expression and a number of distinctions unattainable in English. A

thorough knowledge of the verb and its forms with their uses will enable any one at a glance to comprehend all these.

246.—In ¶ 211 ff., on auxiliary verbs, several forms which enter into the composition of adjectives of different significations were mentioned. Among those then mentioned were:—

스럽소 joined to nouns, and signifying, *to be worthy of, to have the nature of*.

죽호오, *to be worthy of, to be well worth*, etc., and joined to past verbal participles by the interposition of ㅁ.

만호오. *To be able*, which joined to the future participle in ㄹ, of active verbs gives us the English adjectives in *able*.

지오, *To grow*, or 가오, *to go*, joined to past verbal participles, gives us inceptive adjectival verbs.

사랑스럽소	To be amiable, from	사랑	Love.
원수롭소	To be hostile „	원수	An enemy.
보암죽호오	To be worth seeing „	보오	To see.
먹엄죽호오	To be worth eating „	먹소	To eat.
ㄱ르칠만호오	To be teachable „	ㄱ르치오	To teach.
움길만호오	To be moveable „	움기오	To move.
다스릴만호오	To be manageable „	다스리오	To rule.
적어가오	To grow small „	적소	To be small.
커지오	To grow large „	크오	To be large.

247.—A certain class of adjectival verbs are formed by adding 슨 to the verbal stem, using a connective. This is almost restricted to colors and gives the idea of

moderately, or *somewhat*, corresponding to the English termination *ish*.

붉소	To be red	붉으스럼하오	To be reddish.
누르소	To be yellow	누르스럼하오	„ yellowish.
푸르소	To be blue	푸르스럼하오	„ blueish.
검소	To be black	검으스럼하오	„ blackish.
희소	To be white	희웁스럼하오	„ whitish.

248.—A further modification of adjectival verbs of color, is made by a repetition of the stems with *하오*, giving us then, the sense of *to be spotted with*, or to be colored in spots.

붉엇붉엇하오	To be spotted with red.		
누렛누렛하오	„	„	„ yellow.
푸렛푸렛하오	„	„	„ blue.
검엇검엇하오	„	„	„ black.

249.—As in English so also in Korean, but to a much greater extent, nouns are used as adjectives. With many of these we may suppose the insertion of the postposition *의*, but as there is no ambiguity if omitted, it is not used.

조선 사람.	A “Korea man” or a Korean.
주방 소용.	Kitchen utensils.
여름 옷.	Summer clothes.
화로 불.	Hibachi fire.
바다 물.	Sea water.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

250.—With reference to Korean comparison of adjectives it may be said, that as in all other things, so also here, unless ambiguity would arise without their

use, the particles expressing comparison are omitted. In comparing two things then, the Korean as a rule would not use the comparative but the simple positive.

251.—A comparative degree may be formed by the use of the adverb **더** (*more*) preceding the adjective.

오늘 산 궤가 더 토소. The box you bought to-day is better.

이 개가 더 사오납소. This dog is more savage.

이 사람이 더 늙었소. This man is older.

그 말이 더 잘 가오. That horse goes better.

252.—In comparing two things, where both are mentioned **보다**, sometimes written **보담**, signifying *than*, is affixed to the noun having the quality in the lesser degree, and the adjective is used positively. The use of **보다** together with **더** and the adjective, unless special emphasis is desired, is not common among Koreans, and should be carefully avoided by foreigners.

이 책 보다 그책이 토소. That book is better than this.

화륜선 보다 화륜거가
급히 가오. The steam-car travels
faster than the steam-boat.

달 빛 보다 햇빛이 밝소. Sunlight is brighter than moonlight.

더운 것 보다 차운 거시
토소. Cold is better than heat.

253.—The postposition **에서** (*from*) may also be used for **보다** in the sense of *than*, to express a comparative degree.

Note.—The use of **보러** and **보람** for **보다** is wrong, and should be avoided,

이 먹이 더 먹에셔 검소. This ink is blacker than that.

이 물이 그 물에셔 맑소. This water is clearer than that.

그 말 에셔 이말이 빨리 가오. This horse travels faster than that.

254.—The superlative degree is expressed by the use of *데일* (*the first*) preceding the adjective. However, as was remarked concerning the comparative, even when comparing several, the simple positive is used where the English would require a superlative. Here then we see with regard to both comparative, and superlative, that great care should be exercised by the student, if he desires to speak true Korean and not an Anglicized imitation of it, to as far as possible do away with their use and employ the simple positive.

이 북시 여럿 중에 데일 토소. This is the best of several pens.

이 사람이 크 데일 크오. This man is the tallest.

네 시계가 데일 바로 간다. Your watch keeps the best time.

CHAPTER IX.

THE ADVERB.

255.—Korean adverbs may be classified as to their source, and as to their meaning.

Classified as to their source we have Primitive and Derived.

The Primitive Adverbs are few in number, such as :—

지금	Now.	아마	Perhaps.
아까	A little while ago.	아조	Entirely.
또... }	Again.	더	More.
다시 }		덜	Less.
뉘우	Very.	왜	Why.
오직 }	Only.	아직	Yet.
만... }		안 }	Not.
뿐... }		못 }	
얼마	How much.		
몇... ..	How many.		

256.—Derived adverbs may be divided into two classes, those derived from verbs, and those derived from nouns or pronouns.

The adverb regularly derived from the verb, may be formed by adding 이 or 히 to the verbal stem.

In adding **이** to the stem, euphonic modifications naturally take place. Verbs in **ㅎ** change the **ㅎ** into **히** or sometimes into **이**. Verbs whose stems terminate in **ㄱ** add **니**. All other verbs take the form of the stem with its added or changed consonants as found in the past verbal participle, and add **이**.

높소.....	To be lofty.	높히.....	Loftily.
천호오...	To be base.	천히..	Basely.
귀호오...	To be rare.	귀히.....	Rarely.
갓갑소...	To be near.	갓가 이.....	Near.
머오.....	To be far.	멀니.....	Far.
넓소.. ...	To be wide.	넓니.....	Widely.
빠부오...	To be quick.	빠비.....	Quickly.
적소.....	To be little.	적이.....	Little.
밝소.....	To be bright.	밝이.....	Brightly.
쉽소.....	To be easy.	쉬이.....	Easily.
깊소.....	To be deep.	깊히.....	Deeply.

257.—The future verbal participle in **게** or **케** is also largely used adverbially.

다르오...	To be different.	다르게	Differently.
토소.....	To be good.	토케.....	Well.
춥소.....	To be cold.	춥게.....	Coldly.

258.—These two classes of adverbs derived from verbs, have been claimed to be identical in signification, and interchangeable, some verbs preferring the form in **게** and some that in **이**. Such, however, is not the case, and the distinction made in the “Grammaire Coreénne” always holds. The form in **히** is in a sense passive, and indicates the manner, not in the object, but in the subject of the verb. The form in **게** is *active*,

and indicates a manner, *not in the subject but in the object*. These should in many cases be rendered more properly into English by an adjective. The following sentences will illustrate this difference.

새로 쓴 책을 다르게 하였소. I have made the new book somewhat different.

일본 배 얻었소 달너 할수 업소. I have obtained a Japanese boat, I cannot do otherwise.

서울을 쉬이 가겠소. I will soon go to Seoul.

259.—The Korean past verbal participle, may also at times, be rendered into English by an adverb.

내려, Downward. 너머, Too much.

올려, Upward. 건너, Beyond.

260.—Adverbs derived from nouns and pronouns, consist for the most part of a noun or a pronoun with one or more postpositions, used adverbially.

안으로	Inside.	아침에 ...	In the morning.
때에	When.	후에	Afterwards.
절로...}	..... Naturally.	낮재	At noon.
스스로 }		전에	Before.
임의로	Willingly.	별로	Particularly.

261.—Comparison in adverbs as with adjectives is not expressed unless the sense demands it. Ofttimes a simple adverb will be used, where we would use a comparative or a superlative. If needed the same particles will be used with the adverb as with the adjective, and in the same way.

집은 더 잘 지오.	Build the house better.
노래 를 더 토끼 흥오.	Sing better.
내 말이 로형의 말 보다 더 급히 가오.	My horse goes faster than yours.
조선 보다 일본서 비가 자주 오오.	In Japan it rains more frequently than in Korea.

262.—To the primitive adverbs many of the postpositions may be affixed, giving as a result a signification combining the meanings of adverb and postposition, as :—

어디 (where).	어디로 (whither).	어디서 (whence).
이리 } (here).	이리로 } (hither).	이리서 } (hence).
여기 }	여기로 }	여기서 }

263.—To the ordinal numerals, may be affixed the postposition 은 giving us a form equivalent to the English numeral adverb.

첫째는 (*As for the first*) = Firstly.

둘째는 (*As for the second*) = Secondly.

메일은 (*As for the first*) = Firstly.

메이논 (*As for the second*) = Secondly.

264.—A long list of all the adverbs is hardly called for in grammatical notes such as these. From a study of the above rules, if they cannot be formed at will, they can be recognized at sight. Of course in their use, they always precede the word they qualify.

265.—Before we close this chapter, a word or two on Korean responsives seem in place.

예 to a superior, and 오냐 to an inferior, correspond to the English *Yes*; while 아니 올시다 and 아닐다 (*it is not*) correspond to *no*.

These words, however, are not as much used as their English equivalents and as a rule, in answering, the verb of the question is repeated, or some such phrases, as "*I don't know*," "*I know*," "*It is not*," "*It is so*" etc., is used.

266.—With reference to answers to negative questions, the Korean idiom, like the Japanese, is the opposite of the English. In such questions, the English regards the facts as they are, and answers "*Yes*" or "*No*." The Korean on the other hand regards the statement implied in the question, and answers accordingly. The consequence is that we get an answer the very opposite of what we would expect. For instance, in the question "*Has he not come?*" the Korean regards the statement "*He has not come*" which is implied in the question, and if he has not come, answers "*Yes*," meaning that the statement implied in your question is correct, *he has not come*. But if he has come, he will reply "*No*," meaning that the statement implied in your question is wrong, that he has not, *not come, but has come*. This being so directly opposite to the English idiom should be made a subject of great care, for otherwise serious blunders may be committed.

CHAPTER X.

THE CONJUNCTIONS.

267.—We divide Korean Conjunctions into two classes, Co-ordinate and Subordinate.

The Co-ordinate, are those which connect words or phrases that are co-ordinate.

The Subordinate, are those which connect dependent with principal clauses. Some of the most common co-ordinate conjunctions are—

와 or 과.....	}	Signifying <i>and</i> .
및		
고 or 하고.....		
며		
나 or 이나		Signifying <i>either, or, whether</i> .
지 } 가 }	Used with verbs..... Signify <i>whether, or</i> .	
마는	{ Disjunctive and signifying <i>but</i> , etc.	

268.—와, 및, 고 and 하고 are all copulatives and may generally be rendered by simple *and*, and are affixed, like all Korean conjunctions to their words or clauses. 와 affixed to a word ending in a consonant, becomes 파, and where a number of words are united is repeated after all but the last, to which last only, will the postposition governing them all be affixed.

및 is less frequently used than any of the others, and is restricted almost entirely to books. It is generally prefixed to its word, and as a consequence we may at times find 와 and 및 used together.

고 and 며 are used to connect verbs. 고 joins itself directly to the stem, and where a series of verbs are connected, the last only will have tense root and termination : this tense root and termination then settling the time and termination of all the preceding verbs connected by 고.

며 is more largely found in books than in the spoken language, and in uniting itself to the verb, the tense root is not necessarily dropped. For illustrations of 고 and 며 with verbs see ¶ 104 and 200 of Part I.

269.—ㅈ or (*affixed to consonants*) 이ㅈ, is equivalent to *or*, or *either* of the English. It marks alternatives, only one of which need be expressed, with the other or others understood. It may be joined to verbal tense roots with the same signification.

ㅈ and ㅅ are used only with verbs and are affixed to relative participles with the same sense. For illustrations of the use of these three conjunctions with verbs, see ¶ 189 and 187 of Part I.

270.—The most common subordinate conjunctions are—

비록, Used independently.....	} Affixed to verbs... }	Are all concessive and may be rendered into English by <i>though, although</i> .
나		
되 or 되.....		
거니와		
돌 (preceded by ✓)		
도	} Affixed to verbs }	Are conditional and are rendered by <i>if</i> .
만일, Used independently.....		
면		
거든		
나		
나	} Affixed to verbs... }	Whereas ; both causal and concessive.
나		
나		
나		
나		
나	} Affixed to verbs... }	Mark the reason, and are equivalent to <i>inasmuch as, since, seeing that, etc.</i>
나		
나		
나		
나		

For illustrations of the use of these conjunctions and their method of uniting with verbs, see the chapter on verbs. ¶ 181 ff.

Note.—Still further illustrations of Korean conjunctions and their rendering into English will be found in the Chapter on Conjunctions Part II.

There are also a number of phrases that may be rendered into English by conjunctions, however, from the very nature of the case, their true meaning is apparent. A few are as follows, and they can be formed at will.

그러나 } (Although that is so). Becomes { *notwithstanding,*
 그렇다 } { *nevertheless.*

그런고로, *For that reason* } Becomes *therefore*.
그러므로, *Because that is so* ... }
그렇면, *If that is so* Becomes *then*.

CHAPTER XI,

HONORIFICS.

271.—The use of special terms to inferiors and superiors, holds such an important place in Korean, that a special Chapter on this subject is thought necessary. Attention has already from time to time been called to this fact, and in various places the terms used to superiors and inferiors have been marked. In the first few sections of Part II. all the sentences, (unless the sense would not allow, and restricted them to one or other class), have been given in three forms, to inferiors, the polite form to equals, and to superiors. Were these but the three grades with which we have to deal, the subject would be considerably simplified. But in each of these three grades, there are, what we may term sub-grades, and if we desire to be exact, we should have all the proper terminations for even these, at our finger's ends.

These sub-grades are for the most part, determined entirely by the terminations, and a careful study and practice of the lists and terminations given in the Chapter on the verb ¶ 137 ff. will accomplish this. Al-

though the student may not desire to acquaint himself with all these forms, it is absolutely essential if he wishes to be respected by those around him, and to avoid giving offence to his friends, that he make himself thorough master of the three forms, and their use, given in the first sections of Part II.

272.—But not only is the person spoken *to*, to be considered, but in many cases we must also consider the special rank of the person spoken *of*, or the subject of the verb. An honorific of the verb, must then be formed, This honorific is for the most part derived from the simple verb, and formed by the interposition of the particle **시**. With verbs whose stems end in vowels, simple **시** is added, but with verbs whose stems end in consonants **으** or **오** will be interposed as a connective, and **시** will then unite with the form of the stem, as found in the past verbal participle.

273.—The following list of verbs with their honorific forms, will illustrate this.

ORDINARY.		HONORIFIC.
하오	To do	하십시오.
안소	To sit	안저시오.
가오	To go	가시오.
걸소	To walk	거르시오.
듣소	To hear	드르시오.
눅소	To lie down	눅으시오.
서오	To stand	서시오.
짜리오	To beat	짜리시오.
찾소	To look for	찾저시오.
바고오	To exchange	바고시오.
벗소	To take off	벗소시오.
잃소	To lose	잃히시오.

274.—We find however in many cases, that there are a number of verbs that have corresponding honorific verbs, and of course where this is the case, no honorific form of the simple verb is needed.

The following list of the most common simple verbs, with their corresponding honorifics, should be learned.

ORDINARY.

HONORIFIC.

먹소.....	To eat	잡수오.
자오.....	To sleep	잠으시오.
죽소.....	To die	도라가시오.
잇소.....	To be	계시오.
아오.....	To know	통후하시오.
알소.....	To be sick	병환계시오.
평안하오.....	To be well	안녕하시오.
말하오.....	To speak	말씀하시오.
오오.....	To come	림하시오.

275.—There are also certain Korean verbs used to render respect to the person or persons acted upon, or objects of the verb. These are, most of them, honorific verbs from their very nature. For instance you *give* to an inferior, but you simply offer to a superior. A few of these are given below.

ORDINARY.

HONORIFIC.

주오.....	To give.....	드리오.....	To offer.
묻소.....	To ask	묻하오.....	To request.
보오.....	To show	감조오.....	To show.
다리오...	To take with ...	되시오.....	To accompany.
널으오...	To tell	엿조오.....	To inform.
도라오오	To come back ...	환초하시오	To return.

276.—Thus we find that the Korean in speaking considers the rank of the person spoken of, as

well as the person spoken *to*, and at times this double variation takes place in the same verb. When such is the case we may use an honorific verb with an honorific termination, or *vice versa*. While at first sight it may seem as though this would involve complications almost unlimited, a careful study *separately*, of the special terminations and of the honorific verbs, will clear away most difficulties.

277.—The matter of honorifics, however, does not end with the verbs. It extends to the nouns and even to some postpositions, and is very apparent in the terms used to represent English pronouns. There will be two, and at times even more, sets of words, to designate the same object. The one used in speaking to or of a superior, the other, the common every day word. As has been hinted before, it will be found that Latinized Korean is the more polite, and hence we find a large number of Sinico-Korean words, acting as the the polite terms for pure Korean nouns, pronouns, etc.

278.—The following list of some of these nouns should also be learned.

아버지.....	어루신네	Father.
어머니.....	즈당.....	Mother.
삼촌.....	완장.....	Uncle (<i>on father's side</i>).
남편.....	가장.....	Husband.
안희.....	니샹.....	Wife.
아들.....	즈메.....	Son.
딸.....	녀식.....	Daughter.
족하.....	함씨.....	Nephew.
형.....	빅시.....	Elder brother.
나.....	츰츰.....	Age, years of age.

곳 불.....	감 기.....	A cold.
니	치 아.....	Teeth.
집	덕	House.

279.—It must not be forgotten that these honorific terms are not the same throughout the country, and terms used to inferiors in the capital, are in some provinces used to equals or even superiors. This difference, however, is not extensive and can soon be learned, but we mention it here, so that the student shall not only be prepared for some change, but when he is addressed in terms that he has been accustomed to consider degrading, he may first make inquiry as to the usage of the place before he considers himself insulted.

280.—Were it in order in Korea to always use inferior terms of one's self, and to address all others with honorifics the subject would be comparatively easy. We find, however, in Korea that it is important in addressing inferiors to speak of one's self in polite terms, and to address one's servants, children etc., in the terms for inferiors. Unless such a course is pursued one would be considered entirely ignorant of both the distinctions of the language and the rules of propriety.

CHAPTER XII.

THE STRUCTURE OF THE SENTENCE.

281.—While from time to time, in considering the different words we have attempted to show, not only their meaning, but their use and position in the sentence, a few closing words on the structure, of the sentence as a whole are necessary.

In the first place, we may lay it down as a general rule, that the governing word or particle always follows that governed, under these circumstances we consider that the noun governs its adjective, although in Korean there is really no government in this matter.

Or looking at it from another standpoint, we may say, the qualifying word, always precedes the word qualified. Under these circumstances we consider that the action contained in the indefinite verb, at the end of the clause or sentence is qualified or limited by the subject and object which precedes it ; that the noun is qualified or limited by the adjective or participle or other noun with postposition that precedes it ; that the idea of direction, *to*, or *from* etc., contained in the postposition,

which was originally a noun, is qualified or limited, by the word which precedes it.

282.—Taking either view of the matter, (the first of which is the clearer and better) we deduce the following.

Verbs are always preceded by their subject, object, and the adverb qualifying them, and followed by the conjunctions which connect them with other words or clauses.

The noun is preceded by the adjective or participle that qualifies it, and is followed by the postposition which governs, or the conjunction which joins it to another word.

The adjective, if in the adjectival form, precedes the noun it qualifies. If in the form of a substantive, follows the noun with which it stands in apposition. If in the verbal form, it of course, acts as a verb.

The adverb precedes the noun, adjective or verb that it qualifies.

The postposition always follows the word whose relation it shows to another word in the sentence.

The conjunction (except in the case of those used independently, which might well be termed "*intensive*" and are only used in sentences where their corresponding dependent, or subordinate forms are used) always follows the word or clauses that it connects with another.

283.—As a rule the subject comes first, then the object, then the verb.

In a simple sentence then, we have first, the subject, preceded by its attributes, second the indirect object

preceded by its attributes, third the direct object preceded by its attributes, and finally the verb with its adverb or other attributes.

Emphasis, however, may change this, and the emphatic word will generally be found first in the sentence.

The position of the direct, and indirect object of a verb, is immaterial, either may precede the other.

By way of illustration of these rules a careful study of any of the sentences given in Part II. with regard specially to their structure is urged.

284.—When several verbs are to be connected, if they are co-ordinate, the conjunction **고** united to the stem will be used, and only the last verb inflected. If subordinate, however, the past verbal participle of the subordinate verb will be used without a conjunction. For illustrations of this see Part II, Chap. X. Sec. I. 2. (a) and (b).

285.—What has already been said upon the use of personal pronouns, and of passive constructions, leads us naturally, to notice the extreme indefiniteness as to subject, of a large number of Korean sentences. Not only will no subject be expressed, but none will even be thought of, and under such circumstances, when the context does not plainly show what the subject is, it must be rendered into English, either by an indefinite, such as *some one*, *something*, or the phrase must be changed, and a passive construction used.

Indefinite sentences of this kind may be found throughout the book in both parts, and in many cases where definiteness has been expressed by the use of personal pronouns etc., any other subject might have been used.

286.—As in English, so also in Korean, the use of two negatives gives us an affirmative, but this use of two negatives is much more common in Korean than in English.

The following will illustrate this.

미국은 업논 것 업소. In America they have
everything.

이거슨 언잔 찬소. This is good.

그러케 아니함면 못되겟 소. I must do that.

287.—As will be seen from ¶ 230 ff. the Koreans are quite prone to use elliptical forms, and we often hear orders and commands ending in conjunctions, postpositions, etc., but in all such cases, some other word is of course, left to be understood. Such phrases would not as a rule be correct in writing, and while allowable in speaking, would not be classed as elegant Korean.

288.—In concluding this chapter on the structure of the sentence, we would again remind the student, that postpositions, conjunctions, and verbal modifications, are not to be used as in other languages.

What we understand as minute exactness of speech, is a thing not aimed at by the Korean, his desire is simply to express his idea, in as few words as possible, always remembering his surroundings and circumstances. As a consequence the same sentence taken out of its context might not only be ambiguous, but entirely meaningless, and yet, at the same time considered with its circumstances and surroundings it might be a complete sentence.

289.—In almost direct opposition to this, there seems to stand the Korean use of what we have termed conjunctions. The Koreans have no system of punctuation, and where we would use a comma, semicolon, or colon, etc., they would use a conjunction, expressing *cause, manner, means*, etc., as the case might be. Consequent upon this we find that the distinction between sentence and paragraph, does not exist in Korean, each sentence in an English paragraph becomes then, simply a dependent clause, connected by one or other of the conjunctions, and the whole paragraph but one sentence. This becomes much more apparent in the book language, and here is its main difficulty.

290.—In closing these “Grammatical Notes” we would say that we have tried but to introduce the student to the study of Korean spoken language. We would repeat that they should not be studied alone, but in connection with Part II. The accuracy of each rule given should be tested by the student, when thus tested they should be put in practice, for in order to gain any language quickly and thoroughly, practice must be combined with theory. Only by so doing can the student ever learn to use the KOREAN SPOKEN LANGUAGE.

PART II.

ENGLISH INTO KOREAN

OR THE

KOREAN SPOKEN LANGUAGE

FROM THE

ENGLISH STANDPOINT.

1890.



PART II.

ENGLISH INTO KOREAN.

CHAPTER I.

THE VERB.

In the Grammatical Notes, the attempt was made, to approach Korean from the native standpoint ; to take Korean idioms, phrases and methods of speech, explain their meanings and uses, and ascertain their equivalents in English. In doing this, we have however, done but little more than half the work that is before us in the study of Korean. We have approached from but one side, and now it remains for us to approach Korean from the English standpoint ; to take English phrases, words, and forms of expression, and

learn their equivalents in Korean. This has been attempted in the following pages, and while the Korean equivalents, are not by any means claimed to be the only renderings, they are the common and most frequent methods of expressing the ideas they are said to represent. In doing this, we have begun with the verb, because here we find the greatest variety of changes. To a great extent what has already been said in the Grammatical Notes, will answer equally well here. This is very true of the verb as well as of the other parts of speech, and there remains under the verb, simply the verbs, *To be* and *To have*, Auxiliaries, The Infinitive, Passive Constructions, and Conditional Sentences. These will be taken up one by one, the rules for rendering them into Korean given, and sentences to illustrate each rule will follow.

§ I.—THE VERB “TO BE.”

1 Employed independently, expressing simple existence, *to be* is rendered by **있소** ; negatively by **없소**.

2 Followed by a predicate noun or pronoun, *to be* is rendered by **이오** sometimes contracted into **요** or **오** ; negatively by **아니오**.

3 Followed by a predicate adjective, the verb *to be* is united with the adjective. See Chap. VI §. I.

4 When equivalent to *become*, the verb *to be*, is rendered by **되오** and negatively by **안되오**.

5 For the use of the verb *to be*, as an auxiliary See § III, Sec. 1 & 2.

1.

There are some very high mountains around Seoul. *서울 일경 에 었던 매우 (Lit) Seoul neighborhood in certain very

높은 산들 잇다, —잇소,
high mountains is.

—잇습노이다. †

About how many houses are there in this city? 이 성 안 히 집 얼 마 This city within house how-many

나 잇노냐, —잇소, —잇습
about is?

노 잇가.

Is there only one kind of oil in these bottles? 이 여러 병 속에 혼 짜위 This several bottle inside one kind

기름 분 잇노냐, —잇소,
oil only is?

—잇습노 잇가. †

About how many soldiers are there in a regiment? 혼 진 에 군 소 가 얼 마 One regiment-in soldier how many

나 잇노냐, —잇소, —잇습
about is?

노 잇가.

There is no telegraph office in Kang Wha. 강화 에 전보국 업다, Kang Wha in telegraph office is not.

—업소, 업습노이다

There is no use in going before breakfast. 아침 먹기 전 에 갈 Breakfast eating before going

것 업다, —업소, —업습
thing is not.

노이다.

* It will be noticed that for the first few exercises, the sentences are all given in the three forms, for inferiors, equals and superiors, except perhaps in instances where the sentence by its very nature restricts the class to which it is addressed.

† Properly this should be written 잇소 읍노이다 but pronounced issimnida.

‡ Properly this should be 잇소 읍노이잇가 but pronounced issimnika.

Is there not any one who
can go instead?

아 모 나 티신 갈 사 례
Any one whatever instead going man
업 뇨냐, — 업소, — 업습
is not?
노릿가.

Was there not any one who
knew the way home?

집에 오는 길을 아논이가
House-to coming road knowing one
업섯 뇨냐, — 업섯소, —
was not?
업섯습 뇨릿가.

2.

Is that smoke or is it only
a cloud?

더 거시 연기 오 구름
That thing smoke is? cloud
뿐 이오.
only is?

Is that a fox or a dog?

더 거시 여호요 개요,
That thing fox is, dog is?

Is not that a dog sleeping
on the veranda?

더 퇴 마루 에 자는 거시
That veranda on sleeping thing
개가 아니냐, — 아니오,
dog is not?
아니오닛가.

Was not that an earth-
quake?

더 거시 지동 하는 거시.
That thing earthquake making thing
아니냐 — 아니오 — 아니
was not?
오닛가.

3.

Our work is very hard.

우리 일 매우 어렵다, —
Our work very difficult is.
쉽소, — 쉽습 뇨이다.

The street is very muddy.

길이 매우 질다, — 지오,
Road. very muddy is.
— 지오이다.

These coolies are not
lazy.

이 일꾼들이 게으르지
This coolies lazy
안다, — 안소, — 안습
is not.
이다.

The road from here to
Fusan is not good.

여기 석 부산 으로 가는
Here from Fusan to going
길이 토치안다, — 안소,
road good is not.
— 안습
이다.

4.

I do not believe it will be
much of a fire.

내 생각 에는 큰 화재는
My thought in-as-for, big fire-as-for
아니 되겠다, — 되겠소,
not will become.
— 되겠습
이다.

You will never be rich if
you are not more thrifty.

규모를 켜 아니 부리 면
Economy more not employ if,
부자가 아니 되겠다,
rich man not will become.
— 되겠소, — 되겠습
이다.

If this were only mended
it would be as good as
new.

이 거슬 곳지기 만 했더
This thing mending only made
면 전 과 못치 잘
if before as equally well
되겠다, — 되겠소, — 되겠
will become.
습
이다.

§ II.—THE VERB “TO HAVE.”

1 Expressing possession or ownership:—

(a.) By animate beings, *to have* is rendered by the postposition *의게* with *있소*, or by *있소* alone. Negative. by *없소*.

(b.) By inanimate objects, it is rendered by the postposition **에** with **있소**.

2 Expressing acceptance. This idea does not appeal to the Korean as *accepting* and is therefore variously translated.

3 Expressing *To cause* or *To procure*—By **게** **항오** or by **식** **여** with the appropriate form of the verb.

4 Expressing necessity and followed by the infinitive ; it is rendered by the future participle of the verb with **수** **밖** **기** **업소**.

5 For *have*, as an auxiliary see § III. Sec. 4.

1 (a.)

Korean noblemen have a great many servants.

조선 량반 의게 만흔 하인
Korean nobleman to many servant
있다, —있소, —있습니
is.
다,

Englishmen often have light hair and blue eyes.

영국사름 의게 흔히 누른
Englishman to often yellow
머리 와 푸른 눈이 있다,
hair and blue eye is.
—있소, —있습니다.

Japanese cats have no tails.

일본 고양이 의게 꼬리
Japan cat to tail
업다, —업소, —업습니
is not.
이다.

1 (b.)

Our house has only five rooms.

우리 집에 다섯 방 만
Our house at five room only
있다, —있소, —있습니
is.
이다.

The box has no cover.

궤에 두껍 업다, —업소
Box to lid is not.
—업습니다.

This flower has no perfume.

이 꽃시 향내 업다, —업소
This flower to scent is not.
—업습노 이다.

2.

Will you have five dollars or ten ?

다섯 은전 가져가겠소
Five dollar take will
열 은전 가져가겠소.
ten dollar take will.

I will have a cup of tea.

차 한 그릇 먹겠소, —먹겠
Tea one cup eat will.
소, —먹겠습노 이다.

Will you have a flower ?

꽃 하나 가지겠소.
Flower one take will.

3.

I will have him take it away.

가져 가게 하겠다,
Take away make will.
—하겠소 —노 이다.

I will have it done right away.

즉시 하게 하겠다, —하겠
At once to do will make.
소, —하겠습노 이다.

We will have these sent up to Söoul.

우리가 이거슬 석울노 올
We these Seoul to
녀 보내게 하겠다, —하
up send will make.
겠소, —하겠습노 이다.

He said he would have the boy bring them.

은히 식여 가져오 겠다고
Boy employed will bring
하엿다, —하엿소, —하엿
said.
습노 이다.

4.

I will have to go to night.

오늘 밤 석날 수 밖
To-day night starting way outside
업다, —업소, —업습노
there is not.
이다.

If you do not work you will have to starve. 일하지 아니하면 굶물수
Work to do not do if starving way
 밖기 업다, 업소, 업습
outside there is not.
 아니다.

I have to finish that early to night. 그거슬 오늘밤, 일즉 다
That to-day night early all
 할수 밖기 업다, —업소,
doing way outside is not.
 —업습 아니다.

§ III.—AUXILIARY VERBS.

SEC. 1.—AM. IS, ARE.

1 Followed by the active participle :—

(a.) Expressing present continued action—either the present indicative or by the present participle with **것** followed by **있소** or **있시오** according to the rules given § I, 1 and 2 of this chapter.

* Negatively—either the present indicative preceded by **아니** or by the present participle with **것** followed by **업소** or **아니오** (§ I, 1 & 2).

See also Part I. ¶ 132 ff. on compound tenses.

(b.) Expressing vivid future.—

As in English so in Korean there is a way of expressing vivid future by the present indicative, and either this or the future indicative may be used. Negatively—present or future indicative with **아니**.

* For further use of the negative, see chapter on negative in Part. I.

2 Followed by passive participle—See passive voice.

1. (a.)

A crow is building its nest
in the garden.

가마귀 화원 에 보금자리
Crow garden in nest.
를 짓다, —지오, —지옵
is building.
노이다.

The rats are gnawing a
hole somewhere in the
ceiling.

쥐가 어딘지 천장 에서
Rat somewhere ceiling in
구멍 을 뜯은 것 이다,
hole gnawing thing is.
—잇소, —잇습노이다.

That is the baby crying.

더거시 아기 우는 거시다,
That thing baby crying thing is.
—이오, —이옵시다.

Is not the clock striking
now?

즈명종 지금 치는 거시
Clock now striking thing
아니냐, —아니오, —아
is not?
니오닛가.

It is not raining now.

지금은 비 아니 온다, —아
Now as for, rain not comes.
니오, —아니옵노이다.

The carpenters are not
working now.

목수 들이 지금 일 하느
Carpenters now work making
것 업다, —업소, —업
thing is not.
습노이다.

1. (b.)

I am going home next
year.

내가 내년 에 본국 으로
I next year-in own country to
간다, —가오, —가옵
go.
노이다.

1. (b).

- * I was going to Chemulpo yesterday, and met fourteen Chinamen. 어제 제물포 가다가 청인 열넷 만났다, —났소, —났습는이다.
- He was eating some fish, and a bone stuck in his throat. 생선 먹다가 목에 뼈 걸렸다, —넋소, —넋습는이다.

1. (c).

- Mr. Pak was going to America, but his father died. 박석방이 미국 가려다가 아버지가 죽었다, —었소, —었습는이다.
- We were coming to see you several times, but we were busy and could not. 여러번 보러 오려더니 바빠 못 왔다, —왔소, —왔습는이다.

2.

- He was gone when I got there. 내가 거기 있을 때에 벌써 갔다, —갔소, —갔습는이다.
- I went home after nine years, but all my friends were dead. 본국에 아홉히 만에 갔것마는 친구들이 다 죽었다, —었소, —었습는이다.

SEC. 3.—Do, DID.

1 *Do* and *did* are expressed in Korean by the present and past of the verb.

* The Koreans, unless ambiguity would exist, do not use the personal pronouns. The surroundings alone generally determine the subject of the verb. These sentences are taken out of all surroundings, but the student is expected to use them and then circumstances will decide these matters.

2 *Do not* and *did not** used interrogatively, are expressed either by the interrogative present or past of the verb preceeded by *아니*, or by the negative base in *지* followed by interrogative present or past of *아니* *호오*.

3 *Do not*, used imperatively—by the negative base in *지* followed by the volitive mood second person of *마오*, to avoid.

1.

Why do you leave the door open? *왜 문을 열 어 두 는 냐,*
Why door open leave?
 —두 오, —두 습 는 외 가.

They do not make it that way any more. *이 소 이 는 거 러 게 아 니*
Now-a-days as for, that way not
짓 는 다, — 짓 소, — 짓 습
make.
는 이 다.

Where did you put my umbrella? *내 우 산 어 티 노 랐 는 냐,*
My umbrella where put.
 —하 소, —하 습 는 외 가.

2.

* Did not the fans I sent you suit? *내가 당신 에 보 낸 부 치 가*
I you to (hon.) sent fan
합 의 치 아 니 호 였 습 는
suit did not?
외 가.

Do not the steamers sail twice a month now? *이 소 이 화 료 선 한 달 에*
Now-a-day steamer one month in
두 번 식 아 니 돈 는 냐,
twice each not ply?
 —돈 이 오, —돈 이 습 는 외 가.

* *Note*.—Interrogative sentences expressed negatively are regarded by Koreans from an opposite standpoint to the English. The Korean, in his answer, considers not the facts of the case, or the thing expected, but the implied statement in the question and when we would answer "Yes" answers "No" and *vice-versa*.

For example the question, "Has not the teacher come yet?" expecting in English the answer "yes," will call forth from the Korean the answer "no" if the teacher has come, and "yes" if he has not yet come. See Part I ¶ 266.

Why did you not give
the coolie the things he
came for?

왜 짐꾼 에게 가질너 온
Why carrier to, to-take came
거슬 아니 주었느냐,—
thing, not gave?
엇소,—엇습닛가.

Do you not like foreign
food?

외국 음식 토화 호지
Foreign food like to do
아니호느냐,—호오,—
not do?
호습닛가.

3

Do not put on any more
coal.

석탄 더 뚫치 마라,—마오,
Coal more to put-on avoid.
—마옵시오.

Do not take more than you
think you will need.

당신 이 쓸 료량 에 더
You needing thought in more
가져가지 마옵시오.
to take avoid.

Please do not tear that
newspaper.

더 신문지 를 찢지 마옵
That newspaper to tear avoid.
시오.
(hon.).

Do not light the lights yet.

아직 불 혀지 마라.
As yet light to light avoid. (inf.).

SEC. 4.—HAVE, HAS, HAD.

1 Have :—The auxiliary *have*, is generally expressed in Korean by the regular past tense of the verb.

2 Have been :—

(a.) Generally Koreans do not make the distinction between continued past action, and simple past action, but leave it to be decided from the context; hence *have been* in English is largely expressed by the Korean simple past.

(b.) The distinction can be made by the use of the present participle with **것** and the past tense of **잇소**.

(c.) In speaking of the duration of continued action, the past participial noun in **지** with the past tense of the verb expressing the extent of time is used.

3 Had :—The Koreans as a rule do not use the pluperfect tense. Such a tense can be formed, and is acknowledged as correct by many, but the great majority prefer to transpose the sentence and use the simple past tense. See Part I on compound tenses ¶ 135.

Had, is then expressed :—

(a.) In affirmative sentences—either by a complete transposition of the sentence, or by the use of the adverb **발석** with the past tense.

(b.) In negative sentences—by either a like complete transposition, or by the use of **아직** with the past tense.

1.

Have the coolies brought the freight? **짐 군 이 짐 가져 왔 습 더니잇가.***

Have you heard the news? **당신 이 소문 드렸소.**

Why have'nt you brought your dog? **왜 개 아니 드리고 왔소.**

The post man has not brought any letters to-day. **석신관 하인 이 오늘은 아모 편지 도 아니 가져 왔소 습 더이다.**

* Note.—Hereafter the three forms referring to inferiors, equals and superiors will not be given with each sentence but only one or the other as the case may demand.

2. (a).

Your room has not been swept and dusted yet.

당신 방을 아직 쓸고
흠치지 아니 하였소.

This roof has not been repaired for a couple of years.

Haven't you repaired your house lately? 당신 이 이 소 이에 집을
 못치지 아 버 흥였소.

Have you seen the paper? 신문지를 보았소.

2. (b).

Some body has been *누가 이방 쓰논것 의젧소.
sweeping this room.

2. (c).

How long have you been living in Sēoul? 당신이 서울 외천지가
얼마나 되오.

The Sēoul merchants have been selling foreign goods for a long time now.

We have been studying 공 부 훈 지 가 네 시 가
four hours. 되 었 소.

The Japanese have been
several years building
their railroads.

왜인이 혈로 문둥논지가
여러 히 되엿소.

* As has been said before, while this is allowable it is not as the Korean would put it, and, unless absolutely necessary, such sentences as this should be avoided.

2. Negative :—

(a.) Vividly ;—negative present.

(b.) Determination ;—negative future.

1. (a).

If you do not put in more salt it will spoil.	소금 더 넣치 아니 할면 상할리이다.
Shall I send word again to Sëoul?	내가 석울 귀별 또 할리 잇가.
Shall I call a jinriki on my way to Tchongno?	종로에 가다가 인력거 브르리 잇가.
I will call again in three or four days.	삼사일 간에 다시 오리 이다.
If you need one I will lend you mine.	쓸 터 잇시면 내 거슬 빌리리이다.
Will Mr. Kim go with us?	김석방 우리 와 곳치 가리잇가.

1. (b).

To day it will close at six o'clock.	오늘은 여섯시 에 닫갓소.
If it rains "cats and dogs" I'll go.	비가 대단이 와도 가갓소.
Mr. Pak will go for it.	박석방이 취지러 가갓소.
About how long will you stay here?	얼마 즘 이나 석귀 잇 갓소.

2. (a).

Buddhist priests will not kill even a mosquito.	중은 모기 도 아니 죽 이오.
I shall not go to-morrow.	내가 리일 안 간다.

2. (b).

I will not give even one 내가 혼 툼 도 더 주지
안켓소.
cash more.

Not one of these will do. 이것 하나 도 못 쓰겟소.

SEC. 6.—SHOULD,—WOULD.

1 In direct clauses—

(a.) Expressing *intention, determination*,—future of the verb. Negatively—future with 안 or 아니.

(b.) Equivalent to *ought*,—see Sec. 11 of Auxiliaries.

(c.) Expressing* *determination in a past action*—the past tense of the verb; negatively—past tense with 안 or 아니.

2 In indirect clauses—

(a.) Expressing *opinion*—future participle with 줄 아오.

(b.) Expressing *determination, certainty*—form of the future or present used in indirect discourse.

3 In conditional sentences—

(a.) In the conditional clause—by the form of the conditional with 거 든.

(b.) In the conclusion—by the future of the verb.

* Note.—In a simple sentence, the idea of determination conveyed by the English “*would*,” cannot be given in Korean except by a circumlocution, unless it is implied by the context. This idea is however in part conveyed by the use of 제가 with the past tense.

The past tense “*would have*,” is rendered by the future perfect.

See also § IV of this chapter, and Chap. X § 8.

1. (a).

I would go but I have no passport. 내가 가겠것 마는 빙글 업소.

He would pay, but he has not yet received it from Mr. Yi. 잡겠것 마는 니석방 의게셔 아직 돈을 못 봤 왓소.

I would not give you even a cash to keep you from starving. 아니 급게 흥라고 흥륜도 안 주겠소.

1. (c).

In spite of all I could do, he would go to the country. 나눈 암만 말넛실 지라도 제가 식골 노 갓소.

He would not listen to reason. 의리를 안 드렸소.

He would squander all his money in spite of all my efforts to stop him. 말니랴고 암만 이 켜도 제가 돈을 다 허비 흥였소.

2. (a).

I thought they would be here by this time. 이때 넘지 안코 을 출 알왓소.

Did you think it would be so dear? 그러케 비찰 을 알왓소.

2. (b).

Mr. Yi said he would send it next week.	이석방이 훗 일헤에 보내 마고 하였소.
Mrs. Kim said she would come with five other women to-morrow night.	김석방덕이 리일 밤에 다 룬 녀편네 다섯 드리고 온다고 하였소.

3.

If any one should come enquiring for me, say I have gone to the palace.	누가 날 보러 오거든 대컬 노 갖다고 하여라.
You would have time enough, if you would get up earlier.	더 일즉 니러나거든 새가 덕덕 하였소.
If you had been a little more careful, this would never have happened.	조심 더 하였더라면 이러케 안 되었 겐소.
It would not pay to sell it for less than five dollars.	다섯 은전 안히 팔거든 리 업겐소.
If you had gone yesterday, you would have been in plenty of time.	어제 갔더라면 새 덕덕 하였겐소.

SEC. 7.—CAN, COULD.

Can and *could* are commonly rendered in two ways.

1. Affirmatively :—

(a.) By the simple future or past.

(b.) By *수* preceded by the future relative participle, with the present or past of *잇소*.

2. Negatively :—

(a.) By 못 with the future or past.

(b.) By 수 preceded by the future relative participle, with the present or past of 업소.

1. (a).

If you only know how, you 엇더케 할 줄 만 알면
can say anything in 아모 뜻 이라도 일본
Japanese. 말노 하겠소.

If you open the door you 문 열면 보겠소.
can see.

He can only hear in one 한 귀 로 만 듣겠소.
ear.

Can your dog sit up on his 로형 의 개가 뒤 다리
hind legs ? 만 안지겠소.

Can you send anything by 아모 말 이라도 전신
telegraph ? 으로 전하겠소.

When I was a boy I could 내가 어렸을 때 두리
swim two ri. 해 헤엄 하겠소.

1. (b).

When can we see the Ky- 경복궁 대궐을 언제 구경
eng Pok Kung Palace ? 할수 있겠소.

Can we see the inside of 문 끝지 를 엇으면 옥 안
the prison if we get a 볼수가 있소.
permit ?

If you go to the best shops 큰 전 에 가면 조선 서도
you can get good silk in 토 혼 명쥬 살수 있소.
Korea too.

If I am not sick I can walk more than a hundred ri in one day. 병 업스면 하루로 백리 더 걸겠소.

2. (a).

When the fire bell rings I cannot sleep. 불 나다고 종 칠 때에 못 자겠소.

I went everywhere but could not sell it. 소방 갖셔도 못 팔았소.

If you have not government permission you can't sell it. 정부 허락이 업스면 못 팔겠소.

A great noise (of jabbering) arose and we could not hear. 떠드는 소리가 나서 못 알아 드렸소.

I invited both, but neither of them could come. 이 두 사람을 청하였것마는 아모도 못 왔소.

2. (b).

It was dark and we could not see the road. 어두어 길 볼수 업섯소.

I cannot take the accounts to night. 오늘 밤에 셈 볼수 업소.

I cannot go even though he offers me one hundred dollars. 백 은전 주마고 할지라도 나눈 갈수 업소.

He could not get a government permit. 병표 얻을 수 업섯소.

SEC. 8.—MAY, MIGHT.

1. Possibility equivalent to *perhaps* :—

(a.) With present or future—**아마** or **혹** with the future.

(b.) With past—**아마** or **혹** with the past.

(c.) Might have—**혹** or **아마** with the future past.

2. Ability.—Same as could ; or future participle with **번** **히** **었** **소**.

3. Permission, liberty—is rendered variously according to the sentence by a transposition.

1. (a).

May be there are some **모** **기** **장** **안** **희** **아** **마** **모** **기** **가**
mosquitos in the net. **있** **겔** **소**.

May be the steamer will **아** **마** **리** **일** **비** **드** **러** **오** **겔** **소**.
be in to-morrow.

May be we had better **아** **마** **셔** **울** **석** **가** **저** **오** **리** **면**
order them from Sëoul. **토** **겔** **소**.

You might get well if you **부** **산** **가** **면** **아** **마** **낫** **겔** **소**.
went to Fusan.

May be he will not start **하** **로** **있** **을** **동** **안** **에** **는** **아** **마**
for a day or two. **아** **니** **셔** **나** **겔** **소**.

1. (b).

May be he has not heard **혹** **아** **직** **못** **드** **렸** **소**.
yet.

May be he missed the **아** **마** **화** **륜** **선** **을** **못** **밋** **쳤** **소**.
steamer.

May be he has been told already. 아마 벌써 드렸소.

May be they have not begun yet. 아마 아직 시작 아니
했소.

1. (c).

If you had risen early perhaps you might have caught the steamer. 일찍 나르랴 더면 아마
비에 맞겠소.

If Keuija had not lived, justice might not have been known. 괴수가 나지 아니 하였
더면 아마 레의가 업섯
겟소.

If you had only called the doctor sooner, he might not have died. 의원 더 급히 보르기 만
하였더면 아마 아니
죽었겟소.

If he had only been honest he might have been a rich man. 착한기만 하였더면 아마
부자 되었겟소.

2.

If you had come yesterday, I might have gone to-day. 공이 어저께 왔더면 내가
오늘 갈 뻔하였소.

If you had only told me, I might have loaned you the money. 내게 빌렸더면 꼭 일 번
하였소.

3.

May I go and take a bath? 내가 목욕하러 가리잇가.
You may put it in the drawer or the bookcase. 설함에 나 책상에 나
두어도 관계찬소.

I told Sou Pongi he might go to see the Kerdong.	슈봉이 드려 거동 구경 하랴면 하라고 하였소.
You may stay away from school to-day.	오늘 학당에 아니 가도 관계찬소.
Did you say I might borrow your dictionary?	공이 말하기를 즈던 구하 랴면 공의 즈던 구하 라고 아니 하였습니 가.

SEC. 9.—LET, MAKE, HAVE, GET.

1 The Korean causative form of the verb, may stand for any or all of the above. The distinctive differences between them however, can, if necessary, be expressed by the use of other verbs. *Let*, when it means permission, may be expressed by the additional use of 주오, (*to give*); *get*, by the use of 었소 (*to obtain*), or 식이오 (*to engage*), etc.

2 “Let us,” in a proposition—volitive mood, first person.

1.

Soun Yongi has let the lamp smoke.	순용이 가 등을 검게 하 였소.
Shall I let the coolies take the freight?	짐꾼들 짐을 가져가게 하오릿가.
You have eaten enough; now let me have a little.	당신은 넉넉히 먹었시니 시방은 나 좀 먹게 하여 주오.
Please don't let the boys come into the rooms with their shoes on.	은희들이 신 신고는 방 에 못 드려 오게 하여 주시오.

Make him wait a little.	좀 기다리게 하여라.
If those children come in, be sure and make them keep quiet.	흔히 드려 오거든 부딪 종용이 있게 하오.
Make the washerman iron these clothes better.	마전장이 드려 옷을 좀 낫게 다리게 하여라.
I will have Soun Yongi mail your letters.	순용이 식여셔 당신 편 지를 석신관에 전하게 하겠소.
You had better have the carpenter make it.	목슈 식여 문돌 게하 먼 도켓소.
Where did you get this table made?	이 상을 어디셔 식여 문 돌렸소.
You must have your grass cut.	이 풀을 깎게 하여야 쓰 겠소.
Please let the cat go out.	고양이 나가게 하여 주 시오.
Do not let the water run out of the bottle so fast.	병에셔 물을 이러케 급히 쏟로지 말게 하오.
I ought to get my watch repaired.	누구 식여 내 시계를 긋칠 러히오.

2.

Let us go up Nam San to- morrow.	리일 남산에 올라 가옵 시다.
Let's go by way of Chong- nikol to-morrow.	리일 정닉골 노 가옵시다.
Let's rest and have a smoke.	쉬고 담배 먹읍시다.
Let's pull the cat's tail.	고양이 꼬리를 잡 아 당과 자.

SEC. 10.—MUST.

1 Expressing necessity :—

(a.) Affirmative—past verbal participle with the postposition **야** and future of **ㅎ오**, or **쓰오**.

Sometimes also the same effect is produced by the use of an adverb expressing necessity with the future.

(b.) Negative—the negative base in **지** with **말** **아야** and future of **ㅎ오**, or **쓰오**.

Or, by either a conditional clause, or a relative participle qualifying **것**, with **못** and the future of **ㅎ오**, or **쓰오**.

2 Expressing strong probability :—

(a.) Must—future, or future participle with **수** **바** **기** **업** **소**.

(b.) Must have—future perfect.

1. (a).

You must be more careful. **좀 더 조심** **ㅎ여야** **쓰** **겟소**.

You must make him take it whether he likes it or not. **도화** **ㅎ던지** **아니** **ㅎ던지** **먹게** **ㅎ여야** **쓰겟소**.

You must mind whatever your teacher says. **무어시** **던지** **천성** **ㅎ라** **논** **대로** **ㅎ여야** **쓰겟소**.

We must leave the house at twelve o'clock. **집에** **석** **열두** **시에** **떠나** **야** **쓰겟소**.

I must be in Chemulpo by five o'clock to-morrow. **리일** **오시에** **제물포** **잇** **석** **야** **쓰겟소**.

I must pay a debt of one hundred dollars to-morrow. **은전** **백개** **빚진** **거** **술** **리일** **잡하** **야** **쓰겟소**.

1. (b).

- You must not put so much coal on the fire. 석탄 그러케 넋치 말아야 쓰겟소.
- You must not hold the baby so. 아기 그러케 안는 거시 못 쓰겟소.
- You must not leave your light burning when you go out. 어디 갈 때에 등불 허 두고 가면 못 쓰겟소.
- I told Soun Yongi, he must not even touch the flowers. 순용이 드려 화초 문지지 말아야 쓰겟다고 했소.

2. (a).

- It must be so. 그러케 되겟소.
- Mr. Song must have more than these. 송석방 안테 이 보다 더 되겟소.
- You must be dreadfully tired. 대단이 곤홀수 밧기 업소.
- He must be wet through in such a rain as this. 이 비에 흠신 젖겟소.

2. (b).

- You must have seen those books at Sëoul. 그 책들을 석울서 보았겟소.
- It must have been extremely difficult. 퍼히 어려웠겟소.
- The new palace must have been finished before he left Sëoul. 석울서 석나기 전에 새 대궐 다 지었겟소.

SEC. 11.—OUGHT, SHOULD.

1 Obligation, Propriety.

(a.) Affirmative—future relative participle with

거시오.

(b.) Negative—future relative participle of the negative verb with 거시오.

2 Strong probability.

(a.) Affirmative—future relative participle with

터히오.

(b.) Negative—future relative participle of the negative verb with 터히오 (“Ought to have” takes future past participle).

3 Advice.

(a.) Asking advice,—either future in 리가, or conditional present with 토겠소, or present relative participle with 거시토겠소.

(b.) Giving advice,—either conditional present with 토겠소 or present relative participle with 거시토겠소.

4 Censure, Regret,—conditional past, with future past of 토소 or 토할걸그리흐엿소.

1. (a).

The people ought to obey
just laws.백성들이 토혼 법을 좇칠
거시오.Even an enemy should be
forgiven.원슈라도 용석 할거
시오.Men ought certainly to
speak the truth.사롭이 맛당이 바른 말을
할거시오.

They ought not to be asleep as early as this. 이러케 일즉 자지 아니
할터시오.

It was very carefully made, 이 거슬 묵음 드러 문드
it ought not to be weak. 렷시니 약하지 아니 할
터시오.

3. (a).

Which road should I take? 어느 길노 가리외가.

What color ought I to paint this? 무슨 빛으로 그리면
토켓소.

How ought I to translate this? 이 거슬 엇더케 번역
하논거시 토켓소.

I am going to Chemulpo, 내가 체물포를 갈터힌디
about how much ought I 고군군 얼마나 주면
to pay the chair coolies? 토켓소.

3. (b).

You ought to take an umbrella. 우산 가지고 가논 거시
토켓소.

You should go. 로형이 가면 토켓소.

You had better not build a house. 집 짓지 아니 하논 거시
토켓소.

You should consult with your father. 아바지 와 공론하면
토켓소.

Should you not buy a couple? 혼 두엇 사논 거시 토치
안켓느냐.

4.

Then, you ought to have 그런즉 그러케 말 하엿
said so. 더면 토하겟소.

You ought to have been 더 조심 하였 더면 도화
more careful. 겐소.

I ought not to have said a 내가 말 아니. 하였 더면
word about it. 도화겐 그리 하였소.

I ought to have put on my 망건 진즉 썼더면 도화
Mangen before. 거슬 그리 하였소.

SEC. 12.—THINK, SUPPOSE.

1 Regard as a fact—future participle with 출노아오,
출아오.

2 Regard as probable :—

(a.) Likely to happen—future relative participle
with 듯호오 or 듯십소.

(b.) Likely to have happened—future past par-
ticiple with 듯호오 or 듯십소.

Note.—Where we would use the verb “to think,” the Koreans, for the most part, use the verb “to know.”

“To know” with the accusative postposition, conveys to the Korean the idea of absolute knowledge, but with the postposition 로 the idea of an opinion, merely.

송석방을 아오 means I know Mr. Song but 송석방으로
알았소 “I knew him (understood) for Mr. Song,” or “I thought it was
Mr. Song.”

1.

I did not think you would 오늘 공이 아니 올출
come to-day. 알았소.

Some people think that 었던 사람 생각은 그가
man is crazy. 미친줄 아오.

What do you think of such 이 형실을 공의 생각에
conduct? 었더께 아오.

I thought I could go in. **내 생각에는 반시**
half an hour. **각을 알았소.**

I thought Mr. Song would probably be late. 내 생각에는 송석방이 후 늦게 올 줄 알았소.

When I first saw you I thought you were an old friend.

로형을 처음 볼 때에
구면으로 알았소.

2. (a).

I do not think you will
find any good fresh fish
there.

배설각 에는 조닉가
더괴석 청헌 성천을
찬지못 할듯함오.

I do not think you will like Korean food.

공이 조선 음식을 토해
출가 십지 안소.

I suppose there are plenty of fleas in this mat. 내 생각에는 이 자리에 벼룩이 만흔 듯 하오.

2. (b).

I do not think the minister
has arisen yet.

Do you suppose the steam-
er has arrived yet?

어루신니 생각에 화륜선
이 드려왔실 듯 십소.

(Addressing an old man).

I suppose the postman
passed while I was out.

나 나간 동안에 서신군이
지나갔을 듯 십소

I suppose the eggs are all gone. 알 다 썼실듯 하오.

SEC. 13.—INTEND.

1 Intend is rendered by the stem of the verb with **랴**ㅎ오 or **고**작ㅎ오. These two are really almost interchangeable, but the latter is a little stronger and

conveys more the idea of definite purpose, although this distinction cannot always be recognized.

2 Sometimes also the same idea is expressed by the use of the future relative participle with **것**.

1.

- | | |
|---|--|
| I intend to go by the nine o'clock train. | 아홉 시에 화륜거에
가려고 함요. |
| I intended to let you know, but I had no time. | 내가 공씨 알게 하려고
함였 것 막는 바빠서
못 함였소. |
| I had not intended to let Mr. Yi know but he heard it without my knowledge. | 내가 니씨방 씨 알니라는
거슨 아니엇 마는 몰니
듯고 알앗소. |
| I had not intended going, but as that person advised it, I went. | 내가 가라는 거슨 아니
엇시나 그 사람이 권하
기에 갔소. |
| I intended building a house but I could not afford it. | 내가 집을 지랴 함였시나
지력을 당치 못 함였소. |
| I intended to use them but could not. | 쓰랴다가 못 썼소. |
| He intended eating it but did not. | 먹으랴다가 못 먹엇소. |
| I intended to go, but something came up and I could not. | 가랴 함였것 마는 일 의석
못 갔소. |

2.

- | | |
|--|------------------------|
| He says he intended to go but did not. | 갈 거슬 아니 갔다고 함읍
더이다. |
|--|------------------------|

I intended to finish the book yesterday, but I was sick and did not.

그 책을 어제까지 못칠 거슬
 병이 와서 못 했소.

SEC. 14.—WANT.

1. Followed by a noun.

(a.) Need, Require—the verb. 쓰오.

(b.) Desire to have—원하오 or by the use of a verb with 십소 as in number 2.

2. Followed by a verb.

(a.) Desire to do—십소 joined to the verb by the particle 고.

(b.) Wish it to be—밋소 or a circumlocution.

3. Meaning “how about,” “how would it be.”—verb in 띠, 고십소, or conditional present with 었더 하오.

4. Used independently in questions signifying, *for what purpose*, etc.—a noun or pronoun to signify the thing purposed with the postposition 로.

1. (a).

Do you want this? 이것 쓰랴오.

I want a chair to go to Chong No.
 종로 가기에 보교 쓰겟소.

Do you not want some small ones? 적은 거슨 아니 쓰랴오.

I do not think we shall need any crab apples to-day.
 내 생각에는 오늘 링금 쓸데 업슬 듯하오.

1. (b).

Sujini wants some grapes. 슈진이가 포도를 달라고
 십소.

Do you want a small puppy? 조금안 강아지 하나 가지
 고 십소.

I want a Chinese tailor. 중국 옷 장이 엇고 십소.

He said he wanted some foreign cloth. 석양목 좀 엇고 십다고
 호요.

2. (a).

Mr. Pak wants to borrow a small knife. 박석방이 작은 칼 빌고
 십소.

I wanted to see Yi Champan, but he was out. 니참판을 보고 십엇시나
 출입 호엇습더이다.

Although I did not want to write the letter, as he told me to, I did. 그 편지를 쓰고 십지 아니
 호 되 쓰라고 호기에
 썼소.

I have wanted to give you one for some time. 발셔 보러 호나 주고
 십엇소.

Do you not want this letter sent to the post office by Soung Yongi? 이 편지 순용이 식여셔
 석신 판에 보내고 십지
 아니 호요?

2. (b).

I want it well made. 잘 문돌 기를 밋소.

I want it made exactly like this. 똑 이해로 문돌니고 십소.

He wants it browned well. 잘 눌니면 도화 호겟소.

3.

Do you want to change pens? 붓 받고 띠오.

Do you not want to buy four? 셋슬 사고 십지 안소.

Do you want to go to Nam San this afternoon? 오늘 오 후에 남산에 가면 엇더 호오.

4.

What does he want here? 여기 무슴 일노 왔소.

What do you want with me? 무슴 일노 나를 불넛소.

SEC. 15.—WISH, HOPE.

1 Desire to do—same as Sec. 14, 2. (a.) of this chapter

2 Hope that a thing is, or will be :—

(a.) Simple desire—verbal noun in 기 with accusative postposition and 념 띠오; or conditional present with future of 토소.

(b.) Coupled with doubt, fear or regret—conditional past with 토소.

It is also correct to use the conditional past alone as an exclamation, and this practice is much in vogue among Koreans. Sometimes also the past tense of 념 띠오 is used.

2. (a).

I hope to-morrow will be fine too. 리일 도 날 토끼를 념 띠오.

I hope that that boy will be a scholar too. 더 호희 도 천비 되기를 념 띠오.

I hope he will soon recover. 쉬히 낫기를 바랍니다.

I hope it will be done by the day after tomorrow. 모레 다 되기를 바랍니다.

I wish you would tell him. 날이 죽면 토켓소.

I wish it would not rain. 비가 아니 오면.

2. (b).

I wish I had a little change. 돈 좀 의섯더면 토켓소.

I wish you had told me sooner. 더 일찍 알렸더면 토켓소.

I wish that dog wouldnt bark. 그 개가 아니 짖으면 토켓소.

I wish we wouldnt have any more snow. 이 후에 눈이 그만 왔으면 토켓소.

I wish I could learn Korean. 조선 말 비홀 수가 의섯더면.

I wish I were a little taller. 좀 더 컸더면.

I wish he had come yesterday. 어제씩 왔더면 토켓소.

I hoped it would be pleasant to-day, but it is doubtful. 오늘이 토기를 받았 것 마는 었더홀인지오.

I hoped he would come by that steamer, but he didnt. 더 화륜선으로 올라 받았 더니 아니 왔소.

SEC. 16.—NEED.

1 Followed by a noun—Same as Sec. 14, 1 (a.) of this chapter *q.v.* ; or by the use of the past verbal participle with the postposition *야*.

2. Followed by a Verb :—

(a.) Negative—By future relative participle with
것업소.

(b.) Affirmative—Same as must.

1.

You need court robes to enter the palace. 판복 의석야 대궐에 드려
가갓소.

You need a new hat. 공은 새갓 의석야 쓰갓소

You need money to build a large house. 돈 의석야 큰 집을 짓
갓소.

You need flour, sugar and eggs to make this cake. 밀 가로 와 사당 과 알이
의석야 이런 사당 썩
문돌 갓소.

2. (a).

You need'nt wait any longer. 더 기다릴 것 업소.

You need'nt serve tea before six. 여섯 시 전에 차 가지
을것 업소.

You need'nt lock the door when you go out. 댕기 나아갈 때 문 잠을
것 업소.

Tell Mr. Kim he need'nt go to Chong Ro to-day. 김석방 등려 오늘 종로에
갈것 업 다고호요.

As we have a long time yet, we need not go fast. 아직 시가 머럿시니 급히
갈 것 업소.

SEC. 17.—SEEM, LOOK.

1 Appearance—the appropriate relative participle and—

{	모양이오.
	모양것소.
	것것소.
	가보오.
	일이오.
{	듯하오.
	나보오.

or appropriate tense of verb with 나보오.

2 Report—the verb, followed by **그리 아** or the form used in indirect discourse.

1.

The fire seems as though 불이 소칠 모양이오.
it will go out.

The fire seems to be going 불이 소지는 모양이오.
out.

The fire seems to have 불이 소진 모양이오.
gone out.

When the man came for 사름 신 차지러 왔실 때
the shoes he looked a 청 줌 낸것 것하옵더
little angry. 이다.

Those pictures seem to me 내 어림 에는 더그림이
to be hung a trifle too 조금 높게 걸넌 듯하오.
high.

When you talk to him he 말 할때에논 허락 하논
seems to assent. 모양것소.

These mats seem to be 이 방석이 더러운 모양
dirty. 이오.

This gun seems to be out 이 총이 병 난 것 것소.
of order.

- It seems wonderful that you can send a telegram to America in four or five hours ; doesn't it ? 뢰보로는 소오시 동한 이면 미국에 기별을 보내니 아츰 이상한 일이오 그러치 안소.
- This pond seems deep. 이 못시 깊은 것조소.
- This seems the best plan. 이거시 데일상책 일듯 하오.
- Mr. Yi looks strong. 니 석방이 귀운이 매우 셴 모양이오.
- That man seems to be very clever. 그 사름 매우 령리 한 모양이옵디다.
- That child seems very tired. 그 옹희가 매우 곤한 모양이오.
- It seems to be a fire. 불 난것 조소.
- He looks to me like a thief. 나 보기는 도적놈 조소.
- The man who came here this morning didn't look like a Japanese. 오늘 아츰에 왔던 사름이 일본 사름 조지 아니 하옵디이다.
- It looks as though it will rain to-day. 오늘 비가 올가보오.
- He had intended to go to see the sights to-day, but it seems as though the rain will prevent it. 오늘 구경가랴 하엿더니 엇지면 비가 희망 깃깃 나보오.
- Last night it seemed as though it would clear. 어제 저녁에는 날이 킬것 조하옵디이다.
- It does not seem as if there will be much wind. 바람이 과히 불 것 조지 안소.

It does not look like peace. 태평할 것 같지 안소.

It seems as if this leak 이 식는 거시 굿치지
isn't going to stop. 아닐 것 같소.

2.

It seems there was a fire 어제 정동 화제가 났소
in Chong Dong yester- 그리아.
day.

It seems there is a terrible 지금 중국에 큰 흉년이
famine in China. 드럿다 함오.

There seems to be no 시방은 첩 물코로 가논
steamer running to Che- 화륜선이 업다 함오.
mulpo now.

It seems you've bought a 시계 샀소 그리아.
watch.

§ IV.—THE INFINITIVE.

In Korean there is no true infinitive ; that which the French grammarians denominated the infinitive, is so in no sense of the word. In neuter verbs it is the low form of the indicative present, and in active verbs has little or no use except as a mere designation of the verb, much as we say "the verb to be." There being then no true infinitive and the English infinitive having various senses, it will be rendered therefore in various ways according to circumstances.

1 When it stands as an object or subject of another verb—by the verbal noun in 기, or the relative participle with 겠. For this infinitive with auxiliaries, see § III.

2 Signifying the *purpose*, or *object*, with verbs of motion—by the supine in **러** or **리**.

3 Signifying *with the intention of*,—the desiderative base with **고** or future participle with **나고**.*

4 Following the means, instrument or agent—the same as the preceding (3); or, more properly, by the verbal noun in **기** with the postposition **에**.

5 Equivalent to the verbal noun—the verbal noun in **기** or the relative participle, with **것** or **딴** etc.

6 Equivalent to “if” and accompanied by “it will” or “it would” —the appropriate tense of the verb with **면**.

7 Following verbs of command, direction, or advice,—the imperative verb in **라**고 or **라**고 **하**오 sometimes contracted into **래**오. (see Part I. ¶ 229).

8 Following verbs of promising, requesting, etc.—the form of indirect narration in **다**고.

1.

It is wrong to waste time. 세월을 허란이 보내는 거시 그르오.

Are you afraid to have your teeth pulled? 니 새기를 무서워 하오.

The government does not allow foreigners to live in the interior. 정부 에셔 식골에 외국 사롬 사는 거슬 허락지 아니 하오.

I have decided not to buy a horse. 말 아니 사기로 결단 하였소.

* Note.—This last is but a corruption of the desiderative base see Part I. ¶ 238.

Do you want to go to 미국에 가고 십소.
America?

You will hardly be able to 네 혼자 이짐을 가져올
bring this load alone. 수업슬듯하 다.

2.

I went to get the vase 전에 보던 그릇을 사러
that we saw the other 갖더니 벌써 누가사
day, but some one had 갖습더니이다.
already bought it.

I went to find the children 아히들 차지러 갖것 마논
but they had all gone 벌써 다 학당으로 갔소.
to school.

I went to meet you but 로형을 만나러 갖것 마논
you didn't come. 오지 아니 하였소.

I came to pay my debts 빚 갚히려 왔소.

3.

I raised my hand to strike. 썩리라고 손을 드렸소.

Did you do it to make him 그 사름 분히게 흉나고
angry? 그러케 하였소.

Did you say it to make a 그 사름 실업손 사름을
a fool of him? 문돌나고 그러케 하였소.

He bought some arsenic 쥐를 죽이려고 비상을
to kill rats, but his child 샷더니 아기가 먹고
ate it and died. 죽었소.

4.

I want a waggon to send 이 짐을 체물코에 보배
this freight to Che- 라고 수레를 엮고 십소.
mulpo.

- You had better buy a rat trap to catch the rats. 쥐를 잡기에 쥐 덫을 사는 것이요.
- I must have some nails to mend this box. 껍을 못치기에 못을 엿어야 쓰겟소.
- He asks for some money to pay for his supper. 저녁 밥 값 주라고 돈 좀 달나오.
- I should think it would cost fully a thousand dollars to build such a house. 네 생각에는 이런 집은 짓기에 일천원 이나 들겟소.
- How long does it take to send to Chemulpo? 체물포에 전인 항기 몇 시나 되겟소.
- Call a plasterer to repair the inside of the roof. 양 토 못치기에 미장이 불러 오너라.
- Who was appointed to examine the students? 성도 상고 항기에 누구를 체유 하였소.

5.

- I do not know how much I ought to give, to go on horseback. 몰 주고 가는 데 얼마나 주어야 되흘지 모르겟소.
- We went down to the beach but the waves were too high to bathe. 우리가 바다 2호로 갔소 마는 목욕 감기에 물결이 너무 컸소.
- How much ought I to give to have my garden sodded? 우리 마당 세 넓히는 데 돈 얼마나 주면 되겟소.
- Did you not have to pay to cross the river? 강 건너 가기에 돈 안 주었소.

How many chair coolies 북한 가기에 고군군 몇
shall we need to go to 쓰것소.
Pouk Han?

6.

It will be a great mistake 혼돌을 더 기다리면 뭐
to wait a month longer. 실슈가 되것소.

It will injure the country 만일 이런 법을 세우면
very much to pass such 나라에 뭐 욕 되것소.
a law.

I don't believe it would 내 생각에는 오륜형실을
pay to publish the "O 양석로 완각 하면 리가
Ryun Haing Sil" in 못 남것소.
foreign type.

It would be very incon- 체물포 에 이사 하면
venient for me to move 맞당 찬것소.
to Chemulpo.

It will not be very plea- 빗술 지면 상패 찬것소.
sant to get into debt.

7.

Tell Sou Pongi to serve 슈봉이 드려 아침 밥을
breakfast. 가져 오라 고 호오.

Tell the servant not to 하인 드려 석탄 일을
forget about the coal. 너져 버리지 말나 호오.

He told the chair coolies 고군군 드려 화륜선 만날
to go to the river in time 때 에 강으로 가라고
to meet the steamer. 호였소.

Tell the gate-man to go 문 하인 드려 나가 복마
out and get a pack horse. 었으래라.

Did't the doctor advise
you to go to Gensan? 의원이 공을 원산에
 가라고 권치 아니 하였
 습니까.

8.

He said he'd give me five dollars, but he has not.

은전 다섯 개 주마고
홍였더니 아니 주었소.

He promised to meet us 제물로 세석 만나겠다고
in Chemulpo. 샹악 항을 더이다.

I promised to go, but I don't feel well.

내가 가겠다고 상약
했었는데 편치 못해요.

Shall I go and tell the seamstress to come to get her pay?

§ V.—PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

Koreans like most orientals do not find much use for a passive construction. As has been said in the Grammatical Notes, a passive form can be derived from all transitive verbs. In many cases however, the use of this passive, except in certain sections of the country, is considered inelegant. When, then, the foreigner desires to render a passive construction, there are several ways open to him.

1 In some cases, the use of a passive form with certain verbs has become so general throughout the whole country that it is not considered inelegant.

2 There are in Korean a number of intransitive verbs, or intransitive forms of expression, that may and do commonly take the place of the English passive.

3 Where neither of the above methods are admissible, the English passive must be rendered into Korean by a change of the form of the sentence. This change of form will of course vary according to the circumstances :—

- (a.) When the passive construction can be rendered by the active, with the indefinite “they” the sentence will be translated accordingly.
- (b.) When the English sentence is simply explanatory it may be rendered by the past and sometimes the present participle, generally with **것**.
- (c.) When the passive clause is the object of another verb, its verb assumes the active form, and is generally, translated by the participle with **것** or **일**.
- (d.) “To be” followed by the passive participle expressing past action still continuing, is rendered sometimes by the simple active construction, as in (a); sometimes by the participial form of the verb, with **것** **있소**, (or negative, with **없소**); sometimes by the simple verbal participle with **있소**; and sometimes when intransitive verbs are used, by the past form in **더** expressing continued action.

1.

Where were you bitten? **어 티 를 물니엿소옵더니
있가.**

Soun Yongi has been stung in the finger by a bee. **순용이 손가락을 벌에게
쏘이엿습더니이다.**

- He was arrested by the police, on the twelfth day of the sixth month. 륵월 열이흔 날에 꾀고 의게 잡혔소.
- One is open, the other is shut. 흥나 혼 열니고 흥나 혼 닷췌습 더 이다.
- At Chemulpo, Fusan and Gensan, trading posts have been opened. 체물포 와 부산 과 원산에 장소 항구가 열녔소.
- This child was vaccinated by a Korean doctor. 조선 의원 의게 이 은히 가 우도를 식히엿소.

2.

- Don't let yourself be cheated. 속지 마오.
- Man Chini has been whipped several times, for doing that. 만진이가 그러게 흥기에 여러 번 락 마췌소.
- A fire arose in Chong Dong, and about half Sēoul was burnt. 경동석 화제가 배석 석물이 거위 반이나 돛습더이다.
- About when will the new Pouk Han temple be finished? 북한 새 절이 언재나 다 되겔소.
- It was finished long ago. 발석 다 된지 오래오.
- Not one has been shipwrecked. 흥나도 파선 흥지 아니 흥엿소.
- Is much sugar brought to Korea from China every year? 히 마다 중국석 사탕이 조선에 만히 나오.

This receipt has not yet been signed.	이 료자가 아직 유결 맞지 아니 하였소.
I thought foreigners would be expelled immediately.	외국 사람들이 곧 쫓겨 나갈 줄 알았소.
Has the carpenter been paid for the bookcase?	목수가 책장 돈도 갑술 받았소.
While I was in Sēoul, I was taught by a man from Pyeng Yang.	서울 있을 적에 평양 사람의게 배웠소.

3 (a).

Has this room been swept?	방 쓰러트느냐.
Tobacco is used almost everywhere.	담배를 거의 소방에서 쓰오.
I understand that in certain countries the criminals are beaten to death with clubs.	내 드르니 었던 나라에 석논 죄인을 곤장으로 석려 죽인다 하였더 이다.
Diamonds have recently been found in Africa.	금 강석 을 근리 아비리가 에서 찾았소.
At what time is the rice harvested?	어느 때에 벼를 추수 하오.
Where were those oranges put?	그 유즈를 어디 두었소.

3. (b).

This (boat) ticket was bought for a friend, but he has not yet come.	이 선료가 친구를 위하야 산 거시엇 마는 아직 아니 왔소.
This certainly was written with a lead pencil.	이거시 분명히 연필로 쓴 거시오.

- Was this letter brought by the Euiju courier? 이 편지가 의주 비자로 가져 온 거시오.
- Was this cut with a knife or with scissors? 이 거시 칼로 베틀 거시오 가위로 베틀 거시오.
- What is kanjang made of, and when is it used? 간장을 무어소로 문든 거시며 또 언제 쓰는 거시오.

3. (c).

- I should like to hear the komengo well played. 검은고 잘 듣는 소리를 드루먼 도켓소.
- Before I went to America, I had never seen a cannon fired. 미국에 가기 전에 본대 포 쏘는 걸 못 보았소.
- Did you ever see a man's head cut off? 사람의 목 베틀는 거슬 한번 보았소.

3. (d).

- The roof of that house is tiled. 더 집 집 우를 기와로 너었소.
- It is in the drawer, wrapped up in paper, and tied with a string. 설합 속에 드렛 는티 도희로 싸고 노끈 으로 잡아 민 거시오.
- None of those shoes are well sewed. 이 신 바느질 잘 혼것 하나도 업소.
- This fish is'nt well broiled. 이 생선 잘 굶 것 아니오.
- It was hidden under the roots of a pine tree. 소나무 썰회 밋히 곱초아 잇습더이다.

It must certainly be hid- 어디 던지 덩념이 화원에
den somewhere in the 곁초인 거시오.
garden.

Is the lamp lighted in the 공소 방에 불을 켜더냐.
minister's room ?

§ VI.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

We will but consider three classes of conditional sentences in this place.

1st. Simple conditional :—

These are rendered by the simple tenses, present, past, and future, with **면** in the conditional clause ; and the future, or sometimes the present, in the conclusion.

2nd. Supposition contrary to fact :—

This class of sentences may be rendered by the compound tenses, or the forms of the verb in **더**, with **면** in the conditional clause ; and the future perfect in the conclusion. Quite often the conclusion will take the future participle with **번 호오**.

3rd. Improbable supposition :—

When the supposition contains the idea of doubt, “*if*” may be rendered by **면**, with the interposition of a particle expressing doubt or uncertainty as **혹**, or by **거든**.

Note.—As was remarked in the Grammatical Notes, this particle **거든**, has often the idea of time, and may generally be said to give the idea of condition, with the accessory notion of time. In common use to-day, however, it has nearly always, the idea of doubt.

- If you let the fire out, we shall all take cold. 불 쏘지게 하면 우리들이 다 감기 들겠소.
- If the steamer leaves tomorrow we can't go. 뽕가 리일 썩나면 우리들이 못 가겠소.
- If he goes I'll go too. 그가 가면 나도 가겠소.
- If he has gone we can't help it. 갔시면 우리가 할수 업소.
- If he has already sold the books, no matter. 책들 팔셔 팔앗시면 관계 찬소.

2.

- If he were going I would go. 그 사름 〃가더면 내가 갔겠소.
- If you had loaned me fifty dollars then, I could have paid my debt, made a little money myself, and paid you back with interest, in five days. 그때 로형이 내게 은전 오십 개를 빌넛더면 전 빚술 다갓고 내가 돈 좀 먹고 닛시 만에 로형 의게 빌어 온 돈과 번리롤 다 갓 핫겠소.
- If you had told me she was sick, I would have gone there yesterday. 뽕 의섯 닛고 닛넛 더면 어저썩 내가 갈 번 핫섯소.
- If it were not raining we would all get horses and go to the So Chang Myo. 비 오지 안터면 우리들이 다 몰 엇고 소창묘로 갔겠소.
- If I were going to do it, I would have done it already. 그 일 핫섯 더면 팔셔 핫섯겄소.

CHAPTER II.

THE NOUN.

With reference to the rendering of English nouns in Korean there is little to be said here. For the most part, they are rendered by their exact equivalents in Korean, which can be found in a dictionary. In some instances, (and these from the nature of the case are not a few) where the idea is entirely new to the Korean mind, new words must be formed; either by the use of ideas known to the Korean, or by the bodily introduction of foreign words into the language. This latter course however, except where the use of Korean ideas would make the words altogether too cumbersome for use, is to be deprecated.

In not a few cases where the foreigner would use an abstract noun, the Korean would prefer to transpose the sentence and use a verb.

The heat in this room is 이 방 대단히 더웁소.
very great.

Mr. Yi's kindness to me 너 석방이 내게 대단히
was very great. 어질게 하였소.

It is not necessary here, to give further illustrations of the noun, as these are found in all the sentences.

CHAPTER III.

THE ARTICLE.

There are no words in Korean that exactly express the force of the English definite article. As has been stated before, the Koreans are not, for the most part, in the habit of affixing the appropriate postposition to its noun unless it is needed to avoid ambiguity.

The addition of the postposition giving definiteness, has often the effect of the article *the*.

The indefinite article can be expressed by the use of the Korean numeral **한** (*one*) placed before the noun.

Note.—The other form of the numeral, **하나**, is placed after the noun, emphasizing the fact of there being but *one*, and can never therefore take the place of the English indefinite article.

Sometimes, this indefiniteness is expressed simply by the absence of any postposition.

The books have come.

책 들 이 왔소.

Books, (plur. nom.) have come.

The patient took the medicine, but he died. 병인이 약을 먹었으나 죽었소.

A boy came and brought the books. 훈은 책을 가져왔소.

Bring me a pencil. 연필 가져 오너라.

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

§ I. SEC. 1.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

As has been said before, the use of the personal pronoun in Korean is very much restricted and on this account we would again urge upon the student the necessity of omitting the pronouns when speaking Korean. At times however, for emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, and also, sometimes as a matter of politeness the pronouns or words to take their place, are used.

The regular pronouns can be found in the chapter on pronouns in Part I. Other words are often used to take their place, as *소인* (*little man*) and *저* (*my body*) etc. for I; *로형이* (*elder brother*) *어루신* (*aged father*), etc. for you.

The English possessive pronouns are formed by affixing the postposition *의* (*of*).

Note.—In many places where we would use the pronoun of the first person singular, the Korean would use the plural, and often for the first person plural, they will use the plural *우리* together with the sign of the plural *들*. See Part I. ¶ 60 ff.

- I brought the box, and the servant carried the bundle. 그 께는 내가 가져 오고 보통이논 하인이 들고 왔소.
- This is different from what I ordered. 내가 허락논 것과 달소.
- The ladies rode in chairs, but we walked. 녀편네들은 교군을 톡시 나 우리논 걸었소.
- Some of us would like to study history. 우리 중에 소귀 비호랑논이 더러 잇소.
- Everything I say seems to offend you. 내 말 마다 로형을 청나게 하논 모양이오.
- Did you leave the door open? 더 문 네가 열어 노았느냐.
- There was a man here an hour or two ago enquiring for you. 혼 두어 시 전에 사름이 여귀 와셔 공을 차샷소.
- That fur hat of yours just fits you. 공의 남바외가 꼭 맞소.
- My father died three years ago. 우리 아버지 삼년 전에 도라 가셨소.
- Come out to my house in the country, and spend a month. 우리 식골 집 으로 와 혼돌 머므 시오.
- You're a little particular. 당신 이 조금 석다롭소.
- He's a man of ability, but he lacks energy. 지조논 잇시나 브즈런 치논 못 하오.
- Are not these yours? 이것 공의 거시 아니오.

He offered me a hundred dollars but I would not take it.

날 드려 은전 백개 주마고
 흥엿 것 마는 밧지 아니
 흥엿소.

SEC. 2.—COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

There is no one word in Korean, that gives exactly the force of the English word "*self*." It must therefore be rendered according to the shade of meaning to be expressed.

1 When it is simply emphatic—simple personal pronoun with the emphatic postposition **ኔ**, or personal pronoun alone.

2 One's self as well as another,—personal pronoun with **ஈ**.

3 Signifying one's self as distinguished from others—by the use of 저 히, or by the repetition of the pronoun.

4 Signifying alone—by 혼자.

5 Of itself—by 절노.

1.

I'll lend it, just as soon as I
finish reading it myself.
When I wouldn't eat it
myself, do you think I'd
give it to you?

나는 다 읽은 대로 꼭
빌려 준다.
나는 먹지 아니 하였는데
네게 줄 줄 아느냐.

2.

I tripped on that sill two
or three times myself.

We ourselves could'nt 우리도 못 잤는디 공은
 sleep last night, so no 불난디 그러케 잤가
 wonder you could'nt 오니 못 잔거시 이샹
 when you were so near 홉것 업소.
 the fire.

3.

I'll go myself. 내가 친히 가겠소.
 You ought to be able to 그거슨 공이 친히 대답
 answer that yourself. 할수가 잇슬 거시오.
 He said that he himself 제가 친히 은전 오천 개
 would give five thousand 주마고 하였소.
 dollars.
 I cannot clear myself be- 측근은 측근을 상대 압화
 fore God. 발명 할수 업소.

4.

I doubt whether you can 공이 혼자 할가시부지
 do it by yourself. 안소.
 He is unable to teach so 그러케 큰 학당 혼자
 large a school by him- 7명 칠수 업소.
 self?

5.

Do you believe the world 공의 생각에는 세계가
 came into existence by 절노 된 듯 십소.
 itself?

§ II —RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Like the Japanese, Korean is without relative pro-
 nouns, and the relative clause is rendered by the use of
 the relative participle, comes before what in English is

the antecedent clause, and acts as an adjective governing it. For instance, the Koreans do not say "The man who came yesterday" but, "The yesterday came man," 어제온 사람. It may be well to add that the tense of the relative participle will of course follow the tense of the relative clause.

When the antecedent is "*it*" or "*that*," either expressed or implied, it is rendered by 것, or of a person by 이.

Who was that you bowed to just now? 지금 인사 하던 이가 누구요.

Who was that who bowed to you just now? 공책 인사 하던이가 누구요.

He is a fellow that used to be a servant of ours. 전에 우리에게 하인 으로 있던 놈이오.

What is it that crow has in its mouth? 더 가마귀 입에 문 거시 무엇이시오.

Let us see what you have in your hand. 손에 잇는 것 좀 보옵시다.

What the rats don't carry off, the ants eat. 쥐가 아니 무려간 거슬 개아미가 먹소.

Have you done what I told you? 내가 낄은 것 하였느냐.

What was the name of the king who used to kill flies when he was a boy? 어렸실 때에 파리 죽이던 임금의 일홈이 무엇이시오.

The horse I gave so much for, is not worth his feed. 그러케 돈 만히 주고 산 물이 저 먹노축 값 도 못 하오.

- Did they take the carpenter who fell off the roof, and sprained his arm, to the hospital? 집웅석 락상 흥야 팔 부러진 목슈를 병원으로 데려 갔소.
- Who was that woman you met a little while ago with a baby on her back? 아씨 맞나던 흥히 업은 계집이 누구요?
- Which is the drawer you keep your lead pencils in? 연필 든 설함이 어느 거시오.
- Is'nt this the book you put the letter in? 편지 든 책은 이거사 아니오.
- Where does the clay of which they make these bricks, come from? 이 벽돌 만든 흙이 어디서 오오.
- I can't find the paper that these books were done up in. 이 책 찾던 도희를 차잘 수가 업소.
- Where is the book that you were going to give me? 나를 주랴고 흥던 책이 어디 있습니잇가.

§ III.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The English interrogatives are translated by their equivalents in Korean, which may be found in Part I.

For convenience and study, however, we will give a few sentences below arranged in the following order.

1. Who, is rendered by **누** or **누구**, **누**, with the appropriate postpositions.

“Whose” used as a substantive is rendered by **누것**.

Sometimes also *who* may be rendered by the circumlocution, **어느 사람** (*what man?*).

2. Which :—

(a.) Used substantively,—**어느 것**, or **엇것**.

(b.) Used adjectively,—**어느** or **엇큰**.

3. What :—*

(a.) Used substantively,—**무엇**, **무슨 것**.

(b.) Used adjectively,—**무슨**.

4. What kind of, what sort of,—**엇큰**.

Who invented the tele- **누가** **전신**을 **시작** **한**
graph? **엇소**.

Of whom have you learned **이** **때** **까지** **누**게 **배**웠**소**.
hitherto?

With whom are you liv- **누**구 **한**고 **곳**치 **잇**소.
ing?

Whose shoes are those? **더** **것** **누** **신**이**오**.

Whose are those apples? **더** **릉**금 **누** **거**시**오**.

2 (a).

Which do you like best? **엇** **더** **가** **술** **그** **중** **더** **하**
한 **오**.

* Note.—In many places where we would use “*what*” the Koreans employ some other word. The Koreans would not say “What does Mr. Yi think” but “how does Mr. Yi think.” They would not say “At what time” but “At which hour,” etc. In many places also where we would use *what* substantively, the Korean uses it adjectively and vice-versa.

Which of these two books was printed last? 이 두 책중에 어느 거시 그중 나중에 박혔소?

Which shall I do first? 엇던 일을 내가 먼저 하리잇가?

2 (b).

Which road shall I take? 어느 길노 가리잇가.

Which carpenter shall I call? 어느 목슈를 부르리잇가.

In which room did you put the new screen? 새 병풍 엇던 방에 두었느냐.

3 (a), (b); and 4.

What are you doing? 무엇 하느냐.

What have you come for? 무얼노 왔느냐.

What is that? 더 거지 무어시오.

What is a "pogyo"? 보교가 무어시오.

What is Mr. Song's opinion? 송석방 생각은 엇딿소.

What does Mr. Yi think of it? 이석방이 엇더케 녀시오.

Please explain to me what is the meaning of this word? 이 말 뜻시 무어신지 좀 가르쳐 주시오

What flowers do you intend to plant in your garden? 엇던 화초를 공의 화원에 심으 랴오.

By what road did you come? 어느 길노 왔소

In what neighborhood does Mr. Kim live? 김석방이 어느 동네 사오.

At what time does the boat start? 어느 때에 화륜선 켜나오.

What is the reason? 무슨 까닭 이오.

What is that man's name? 그 사람이 성명이 무엇시오.

What is the name of this fish? 이 성전 일흠이 무엇시오.

What is the name of the place where they get that coal? 그 석탄 나논 데 더명이 무엇시오.

What do they call the river this side of Mapoo? 마포 이편작 강 일흠이 무엇시라고 호오.

In what box did you put it? 그 거슬 어느 궤에 너헛소.

CHAPTER V.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have been divided into two classes, qualifying, and limiting, the latter have again been divided into articles, pronominal adjectives, and numerals. The few words necessary on articles have already been given, numerals and qualifying adjectives have in part been treated in Part I., and a few additional hints will be given later. There remain therefore for our consideration in this place, pronominal adjectives, or adjectives that are sometimes used to take the place of nouns. Among these are—

All	Either	Neither	Such.
Any	Few	One	Same.
Both	Many	Several	That.
Each	Much	Some	This etc.

In the following selection of these words it will be noticed that some not commonly called pronominal adjectives are given. This is because at times they do act as such and take the place of nouns.

SEC. 1.—THIS, THAT, SUCH.

1 This :—

(a.) Used substantively—이것.

(b.) Used adjectively—이.

2 That :—

(a.) Used substantively—그것, 더것.

(b.) Used adjectively—그, 더.

3 Such :—

(a.) “Like this”—이런.

(b.) “Like that”— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{그런.} \\ \text{더런.} \end{array} \right.$

더, 더것, 더런, etc. are used of things near or in sight.

그, 그것, 그런, etc. are used of things more or less remote or out of sight.

Followed by an adjective, and in certain other places where the adverbial form appeals to the Korean, as more proper than the adjective form, the adverbial forms of 이런, 그런, 더런 are used.

“Such” used substantively, will be rendered by the adjective form with 것, where it refers to a thing, and with 이 or 사람 when referring to a person.

Note.—The remarks made about the use of the plural ending, 들, in the chapter on nouns in Part I., apply equally here, and to all pronouns. Unless then ambiguity would exist without this postposition, we will be safe in omitting it, and in translating “these,” “those,” etc., as though they were “this,” “that.” In fact it may be said, that not only are we safe in omitting them, but that we would not be speaking true Korean in using them. In the use of the adjectival forms, we would remind the student that in Korean, there is no agreement either in case or number between the adjective, and its noun. It will also be noticed, that in some places where we would use “this” with a noun, the Koreans would use a noun in which “this” is implied.

1. (a).

Is this a mosquito bite, or a flea bite?	이거시 모기가 문티요 벼룩이 문티요.
This is neither colloquial nor book language.	이거시 말하논 말도 아니오 책말도 아니오.
This is neither cast iron nor brass.	이거시 무쇠도 아니오 쥬석도 아니오.
Have you any silk exactly like this?	공씨 이것과 똑같은 명쥬가 잇소.
These are much better than yours.	이것들이 로형의 것보다 뉘우 낫소.
Do your trees yield as much fruit as these?	로형의 과목들이 이것과 갓치 만히 여오.

1. (b).

I have not even yet finish- ed this book.	이 책 아직 다 못 보앗소.
I want something to put this water in.	이 물 담을 그릇 하나 차지요.
This house is too large for you.	이 집이 공의게 너무 크오.
This is the best day we have had in a long while.	오래 간 만에 오늘 날이 뉘일 토소.
This year we have had a bad rice harvest.	올 해는 화곡 추쥬 잘못 되엿소.
In these days Koreans are beginning to regard all the world as brothers.	이사이 논 조선 사름이 온 세샹을 형제로 넉이논 거슬 시작하오.
These apples are all bad.	이 룡금 다 척엇소.

2. (a).

What's that (<i>not seen</i>) ?	그 거시 무어시오.
You wónt need as much as that.	그 처럼 만히 쓸터 업겟소.
That is just right.	그거시 득 알맞소.
Put these in the box and those in the drawer.	이 거 손 궤 속에 너코 더 거 손 설합 속에 너허타.
What machine is that ?	더거시 무슴 기계오.

2. (b).

Have you read that book ?	그 획 늙은 해 외소.
You had better not eat too many of those cakes.	그 과즈는 너무 만히 먹지 마는 거시 토켓소.
I have never met either of those two men.	그 사 례은 둘 다 맞난 해가 업소.
Do you know how long that rope is ?	더 줄 이 얼마나 긴 걸 아시오.
That dog ought to be killed.	더개 죽일 거시오.
Is'nt that box nailed up yet ?	더 궤는 아직 못 박지 아니 흥엿소.
That I don't understand (<i>the rest I do</i>).	그 거 손 나 는 몰나.
That horse is lame.	그 말이 전다.
That boy is the laziest fellow I ever set eyes on.	그 혼히 내 눈으로 본 놈 중에 데일 게어룬 놈이오.

SEC. 2.—EITHER, NEITHER, BOTH.

There is no one word in Korean exactly equivalent to any one of these terms and they can only be rendered by the use of several words. Where it is *either* or *neither* of two, if this idea is to be expressed, **둘중**에, (*among two*) with or without one of the demonstrative pronouns **이**, **그**, or **더**, must be used in addition to the word used to render *either* or *neither*, as the case may be. Where it is of several, **중**에 with one or other of the demonstrative pronouns is necessary. For example the Korean would not say, “Will either of these do?” but “Of these two, will one do?” “For the rendering then of “*either*” “*neither*” and “*both*” we obtain the following rules.

1. Either :—

(a.) Signifying, one ;—**둘중**에 **하나**, or **둘중**에 with **것** preceded by the relative participle with or without **하나**.

(b.) “One or the other,” or “both ;”—**둘중**에 with **아모나** of persons, and with **아모것** of things, or **아모** with the name of the thing repeated.

2. Neither, or Either, with the negative :—The same as No. 1, *a.* and *b.* with the negative, or **아모도** with negative may be used.

Note.—Where it is of *several*, of course, **둘** will not be used.

3. Both :—**둘다**, **양인** or **량**, with the noun or its equivalent repeated.

1. (a).

Is either of these pencils yours?	이 붓 하나흔 로형의 거시오.
Will either of these suit you?	이 중에 뭐 음 맞는저 하나 잇소.
Is either of those men-of-war an iron-clad?	그 병선 둘중에 하나흔 열갑천 이오나잇가.
Did either of your sons come here yesterday?	로형 아들 둘중에 어저께 하나 여기 왔습나나 잇가.

1. (b).

Either of those will do, hand me one please.	그 둘중에 아모 거시나 쓰겟시나 하나 날 주오.
Either of those sticks would be strong enough.	그 두 막닥이 중에 아모 거시나 덕덕이 돈돈 하오.
Either way will do.	아모러케나 쓰겟소.
You will find that character in either dictionary.	그 글즈 두 즈던 중에 아모 즈던에셔나 찾겟소.

2.

Neither of those pens is good for anything.	이 두 붓중에 하나도 쓸 것 업소.
I think neither of those houses belongs to Mr. Kim now.	그 두 집 중에 지금은 아모 거시나 김씨방의 것 아닌 클 아오.
I hope neither of you is wounded.	공 둘 중에 아모도 땃치지 안 키를 보타오.

Does'nt either of these colors suit you?	이 두 빛중에 무슨 맞는 것 업소.
You must not touch either of these books.	이 두 책 아모 거시나 문지지 말아야 쓰겟소.
You cannot trust either of them.	그 두 사람 중에 아모도 믿을 수 업소.
This character is not in either of the dictionaries.	이 두 사전 중에 이 글조 있논 사전 업소.
Did not either of your friends come?	로형의 친구들 중에 아모도 아니 왔습논나잇가.

3.

Both of my flower pots fell off the shelf and were broken.	개 꽃분이 둘 다 탁트예셔 논려져셔 부서졌소.
Please lend me both, for a few moments.	둘 다 잠간 빌녀 주시오.
You must certainly do both.	둘 다 불가불 하셔야 하겟소.
These ornaments (<i>for the person</i>) are both beautiful.	이 논리기 둘 다 훌륭하오.
My parents both died while I was a child.	부모 량친이 나 어렸실 적에 도리가갓소.
Bring both the hammer and the screw driver.	장도리 하고 톱 하고 둘 다 가져 오 너라.
Have you looked in both pockets?	두 주머니에 다 차자 보앗소.

These chair coolies are 이 고 군 군 이 둘 다
both drunk. 휘헅헅소.

SEC. 3.—EACH.

1. Signifying every one individually “*each*” may be rendered by **마다** or **각**.

2. Signifying apiece—**식** or **하나식**.

마다 and **식** follow the noun while **각** precedes it.

Note.—Frequently Koreans use “*each*” twice and sometimes oftener, in the same sentence, where we would use it but once. For example where we would say, “I will take three of each sort,” the Korean would be very apt to say, “Of each sort, I will take three each.” We would note also, that the distinction made above cannot be rigidly adhered to; and as in English “*each*” and “*every*” are at times interchangeable, so **하나식**, and **마다**, may at times be used, the one for the other.

3. Each other :—**서로**.

1.

Each student lives by him- self. **성도** **마다** **각각** **거쳐**
호요.

Each soldier had on a dif- **병티** **마다** **다른** **군복을**
ferent uniform. **입엇소.**

Each man does as he **각** **사롭** **제** **멋음** **대로**
likes. **호요.**

Each came up in turn and **각** **사롭이** **차례로** **외셔**
received his share. **제목을** **봣앗소.**

Each horse has its own **각** **말이** **제** **마부** **잇소.**
groom.

Each child recited in turn. **각** **은희** **차례로** **외윳소.**

2.

Give one to each child. **은희들** **하나** **식** **주요.**

Put a spoonful of tea in each of these cups.	이 차종에 차 한 숟가락 씩 너혀라.
Put a stamp on each of these letters, and mail them.	이 편지에 인지 하나씩 붙치고 셔신 관에 두 어라.
I'll take three of each sort.	각 식으로 셋씩 가지 겟소.
These lamps have two chimneys each.	이런 등에는 류리 둘씩 잇소.
Give each man three of each kind.	각 사람의게 각식으로 셋씩 주어라.
You must put three hinges on each door.	각 문에 경첩 셋씩 두 어야 쓰겟소.

3.

Those two men hate each other like cats and dogs.	그 두 사람 서로 뽀뽀 하논 거시 고양이 와 개와 서로 뽀뽀 하논 것 과 겐소.
Koreans should help each other all they can.	조선 사람 재 힘 대로 서로 도와 출거시오.
Those two men love each other like brothers.	그 두 사람 형제 겐치 서로 사랑하오.

SEC. 4.—SOME.

As was remarked in Part. I. the Korean interrogatives serve equally as well for indefinite pronouns, and hence we get the following rules for rendering "*some*."

1 Somebody—누가, 누구.

2 Something—무엇.

3 Some one of a particular group :—

Here the “*some*” is omitted, and “*one*” only is translated by **하나**.

4 When it represents indefinite designation and is equivalent to “*a certain* :”—**엇던**.

5 Signifying *a part* or *portion*—**도** or **드러**.
“*Some...some*” becomes **도...도** or **드러...드러**.

6 Signifying an indefinite quantity :—

(a.) Used as a substantive—it can only be rendered by some such word as **쯤** or **드러논**.

(b.) Used as an adjective—it is not rendered.

7 “*Some more*” :—

(a.) In addition—**더**.

(b.) Left—**엇히**.

1.

Somebody is knocking at the door. **누가 문을 두드리오.**

I am positive somebody has told it. **정녕 누가 말한거슬 아오.**

Somebody must go to Sēoul to-day to get that money. **그 돈 차지러 누가 셔울노 오늘 가야 쓰겟소.**

Somebody came to see you this afternoon, but refused to leave his card. **오늘 오후에 누가 로형 보러 왔것 마논 명첩 두기를 슬히여 하엿소.**

2.

You had better plant something here. **여기 무엇 심으면 토켓소.**

Something fell down and woke me up at about five this morning.

Have you not put some- 무거운것 무엇 이 설합
thing heavy in this 속에 아니 너했느냐.
drawer?

Have you not dropped something? 공이 무어슬 뺏이지 아니
 했소.

3.

Can you spare me some 이 중에 하나 날 줄수
one of these? 의소.

Will not some one of the
coolies from this neigh-
borhood do? 이 동년 외는 모군 중에
하나 못 쓰겟습니
나.

4.

Some scholar has written a history in about fifty volumes.

엇던 문장이 오십 권이나 되는 소괴를 지엇소.

Some general with but two or three hundred soldiers defeated the Chinese army last year.

옛년 대장이 삼년에 이삼
백명 군소만 거느리고
청국 군소를 이적엿소.

5.

Some tables have three 세 다리 상 도 의 소.
legs.

Some people sympathize
with England, and some
with Russia.

영국 편 드는 사람 도
있고 아라사 편 드는
사람 도 있소.

- Some said "go," and some said "don't go." 가라는 사람도 있고 가지 말라는 사람도 있소.
- Some among those soldiers were cavalry. 그 병터 중에 기병 이 더러 있소.
- Some of the English kings were wise men. 영국 임금 중에 더러는 지혜 있소.
- Most blind men are ignorant, but some are celebrated scholars. 눈 먼 사람이 거위 다 무식한것 마는 그중에 유명한 문장 도 있소.
- Some of the most celebrated men have been blind. 제일 유명한 사람 중에 더러는 소경 이오.
- Make some white and some black. 더러는 희게 하고 더러는 검게 하라.
- Some of them are better than others. 그중에 나쁜 것도 있소.
- I keep some of my letters, but most of them I burn up. 내 편지 중에 더러는 잘 두나 거위 다 태우오.
- Soung Yongi put some in the bookcase and the rest are still in the box. 손용이가 더러는 책장 속에 넣고 나머지는 궤 속에 그저 있소.
- I gave Mr. Song some, ate some myself, and put the rest in the drawer. 더러는 송씨 방 주고 더러는 내가 먹고 나머지는 서랍에 넣소.

6. (a).

- Sprinkle some there. 더기 좀 뿌리오.
- Some probably dropped out on your way home. 집에 가는 길에 좀 빠졌실 듯하오.

Take some, to try, and see 더러는 시험 으로 가져
how you like it. 가서 토화 훑어
보아라.

6. (b).

I want to embroider some 명주에 슈를노코 십소.
silk.

Tell the cook to make some 먹식균 드려 중원 차를
Chinese tea. 만들어 주고 하오.

I wish I had planted some 이 화원에 월계 심었 더면
roses in this garden. 토켓소.

7. (a).

Tell Sujini I must have 슈진이 드려 못시 더
some more nails. 잊어야 쓰겟다고 하오.

Tell the servant to put 하인 드려 석탄 더
some more coal on. 넣어고 넣으오.

Please give Mr. Pak some 박석방 의게 토회 더
more paper. 주시오.

7. (b).

There are some more in 오른편 설함에 잊히
the right hand drawer. 잊소.

Did you say there was 집에 밀 가로 잊히 잊다
some more flour in the 고 하엿습니잇가.
house?

SEC. 5.—ANY.

1 Persons :—

(a.) Somebody—누가, 누구 or the relative clause
with 이. Negatively—the same with the nega-
tive.

- (b.) Anybody whatever, no matter who.—아모나, 누구던지. Negatively—아무도, 누구던지 with the negative or the relative clause in 이 with **하나도 업소.**

2 Things :—

- (a.) Something—무엇 or 무슴 with a noun, or the relative participle with **것**. Negatively—the same with the negative.
- (b.) Anything whatever, no matter what—아모거시나, 아모거시라도, 무어시던지, or 무슴 followed by **던지**. Negatively—by the same with the negative, except that 아모거시나 becomes **아모 것도**. This same negative form is very emphatically rendered by the use of the relative participle with **것하나도 업소.**

3. One or more, any at all :—

- (a.) In affirmative sentences—not rendered.
- (b.) In negative sentences, signifying none at all—조금도 or **하나도** with the negative.

4. Any more :—

- (a.) In affirmative sentences—**엇히** or **더**.
- (b.) In negative sentences **더** with the negative.

1. (a).

Is there anybody in the 방에 누가 있소.
room ?

Did anyone ever attempt 전에 누가 시험하엿소.
it before ?

Did not anyone say anything to you about it?	누가 아모 말도 아니 하옵더니잇가.
If anybody should call, say I can't see them.	누가 와서 찾거든 못 본다고 하셔라.
Cannot anyone translate this?	이거슬 번역 할이 업소.

1. (b).

Please call any one of the soldiers.	병티 하나 불너주오 누구 던지.
	or 병티 하나 누구 던지 불너 주오.
	or 아모 병티 나 불너 주오.
That's a thing that any boy ought to know.	그거슬 아모나 알거시오.
Anybody who knows Ermun can read that.	누구던지 언분 아는 사 람은 그거슬 능히 읽 으오.
Is'nt there any one who can go?	아모도 갈 사람 업습니 잇가.
There is'nt anybody who lives without sin.	죄 아니 범하고 사는 이가 하나도 업소.
Nobody came to see me while I was sick.	병 잇실 적에 아모도 와 보지 아니 하였소.

2. (a).

Is there anything in my eye?	내 눈에 무어시 드렸소.
------------------------------	---------------

Did Mr. Kim send any- thing to me? 김 석 방 이 내 게 무 엇
보내 옵 더 니 있 가.

Have you any business to attend to? 무 슴 볼 일 있 소.

Did Mr. Yi tell you any news? 이 석 방 무 슴 소 문 말 하
옵 더 니 있 가.

I wish these boxes had nothing in them. 이 례 들 무 엇 안 드 려
시 면 도 켜 소.

Did you give anything? 무 엇 주 었 습 니 있 가.

Did you say you had no- thing to do? 할 일 업 다 고 하 니 야.

2. (b).

One can accomplish almost any thing if he is per- severing. 백 이 있 시 면 거 위 아 모
것 도 성 취 하 요.

Any soft wood will do. 무 슴 나 모 던 지 연 하 면
쓰 겠 소.

Any one of those colors will do. 내 상 각 에 이 빛 중 에 는
아 모 거 시 나 쓸 듯
하 요.

Give me any one of these cups. 그 차 종 중 에 아 모 거 시
라 도 하 나 주 요.

Not any one of these toys will please the children. 이 작 란 가 음 중 에 인 히
맛 음 에 맞 는 것 하 나 도
업 소.

There was nothing there that I liked. 거 기 서 나 도 화 하 는
거 슴 아 모 것 도 업 셸 소.

3. (a).

Are there any Chinese characters in that book? 그 책 안희 진서가 드럿소.

Are there any men-of-war in Chemulpo now? 체물포에 지금 군함 잇소.

Are there any American merchants in Fusan? 부산에 미국 장사 잇소.

Are there any schools where English is taught in Pyeng Yang? 평양에 미국 말 7루치는 학당 잇소.

3. (b).

Have'nt you any money? 돈이 조금 도 업소.

Are there no sheep in Korea? 조선에 양 하나도 업소.

Don't you have any good fruit in Japan? 일본에 토흔 실과 하나도 업습니잇가.

Didn't you see any ducks on the road from Chemulpo? 체물포서 오는 길에 오리 하나도 못 보앗소.

4. (a).

Is there any more flour? 옻히 밀 가로 잇소.

Have you any more of the paper I bought the other day? 그전에 사던 토히 옻히 잇소.

Have they any more Pyeng Yang coal at Chemulpo? 체물포에 평양 석탄 옻히 잇소.

4. (b).

Isn't there any more sugar 집에 설탕이 더 업소.
in the house?

Do not put in any more. 더 넣치 마오.

Do not put any more ice 얼음 께 섰디 곳치기 전에
in the refrigerator until 얼음 더 넣치 마라.
the leak is mended.

SEC. 6.—EVERY.

1 Persons :—

(a.) Everybody, people generally—누구던지.

(b.) Everybody no matter who, anybody whatever,—누구라도 or 아무라도.

(c.) Everyone of a particular group—모도, 다.

2 Things :—

(a.) Everything, things generally—무어시던지.

(b.) Everything no matter what, anything whatever,—무어시라도, 아무거시라도, 무어시던지 and sometimes by a change in form of the sentence.

(c.) Everyone of a particular group—다, 모도.

“Without exception” is rendered by 이것더것업시.

Note.—아모 is more emphatic than 누구. There are also many other ways of expressing these same ideas by a change in the form of the sentence, but enough are given here for all practical purposes.

1. (a).

Everybody expected war. 누구던지 싸움이 될 줄
알았소.

Everybody has to go to the mountains in summer. 누구 던지 녀름 에는 산에 갈 수 밋기 업소.
 One ought to be polite to everybody. 뉘게 던지 공순햏여야 홉 거시오.

1. (b).

Everybody can go to see the President. 아모라도 대통령을 보러 갈수가 잇소.
 Every Jew had to learn a trade. 유더하 국 사름은 아모라도 장식 일을 비호게 햏엿소.
 Every Korean must have a top knot. 조선 사름은 아모라도 상투 잇셔야 쓰 깃소.
 They send every one to the same prison. 아모라도 혼옥에 보낸다.

1. (c).

Please make every one sit down. 다 안게 햏시오.
 When I opened the door, everybody said "You must not come in yet." 배가 문 연즉 모도 아적 드러오지 말나고 햏을 되다.
 The weather was bad and every one in our house took cold. 일기가 언잔으니 집에 잇는 사름들이 모도 감기 드럿소.

2. (a).

Some people think that everything came into existence of itself. 무어시던지 다 절노 된줄 햏는 이가 잇소.

Have you enough of every-thing, to last till you get to Pyeng Yang? 무어시던지 평양 석지 쓰기가 넉넉 할것냐.

Seems to me you always find fault with every-thing. 나 보기에 공은 무어시던지 칩망하느 모양이오.

2. (b).

You seem to think you know everything. 공은 아모거시 라도 아는 줄 아는 모양이오.

In a little while the Japanese will be able to make everything. 쉬이 일본 사롭이 아모 거시 라도 만들것소.

That baby wants every-thing he sees. 그 어린 은희는 보는 대로 가지고 시버호오.

You must'nt give the baby everything he wants. *아기 의게 무어시던지 달나는 대로 다 주지 마는거시 을소.

They can teach everything at the government college. 육영공원 예석 아모 거시 라도 가르쳐 주겠소.

2. (c).

Leave everything as it is. 다 그대로 두오.

Every thing in the house was burnt up. 집 안에 물건이 모도 등 버렸소.

* N. B. In this sentence it would not do to say simply 무어시던지 alone with the negative for this would mean you must not give him anything. If the idea is not to give all 다 with the negative must be used, and in such a sentence as the above, some qualifying clause must be inserted.

Have you done every thing 내가 다 일은 대로
as I told you? 하였는나.

Every one of these bottles is broken. 이 병들 이 모두 깨여
졌소.

Every one without excep- 이것 더것 업시 다 두
tion was broken in two. 쪽에 낫소.

SEC. 7.—No, NONE, NOBODY.

1 Nobody—**없소** with either the relative clause with **이**; or **누구도**, or **아무도**, or **누구든지**.


2 Nothing—**아무것도** with the negative, or the relative clause with **것** and the negative.

Note.—Sometimes with a relative clause, the repetition of the word will take the place of 것,

3 No :—

(a.) Not any—negative of verb.

(b.) Emphatic—signifying *none at all, not a single one*.—조곰도, 하나도, 도모지, 아조, etc. with the negative.

4 No more— with the negative.

1.

They looked at one another
but nobody said a word.

서로 다 보기 눈 하나
아모도 말 하지 아니
했었소.

Nobody can sit up till after twelve o'clock every-night and get up early every morning without breaking down.

밤마다 밤중 서지 자지
안코 아침마다 일즉
너려나면 힘 이 진흔지
안논이 도모지 업소.

Are none of you wet?	아모도 옷 저즌이 업소.
Nobody expected peace so soon.	아모도 그러케 쉬이 화친 된줄 몰랐소.

2.

The house caught fire, but nothing was burnt.	집에 불이 났으나 든거슨 업소.
I took the cover off, and looked in, and there was nothing there.	두검을 벗겨 본즉 아모 것도 업습더이다.
None of those boats is very fast.	더 비 중에 흔척도 섰른 비가 업소.
He showed me several, but none of them suited me.	내게 여러홀 보였 것 마는 맛음에 맞는 것업섯소.

3. (a).

I've had no fire all day.	오늘 종일 불이 업섯소.
Are there no snakes in this neighborhood?	이 근처 비암은 업소.
I found no mistakes in the essay.	글 장에 잘못 흔것 못 찾섯소.

3. (b).

Do you say there is no kerosene in Korea?	조선 에는 도모지 석유가 업단 말이오.
Are you sure there are no mosquitoes in the net?	모기 장 속에 덩녕 모기가 흔 마리도 업는 걸 아오.

Are there no strawberries in the garden? 화원에 딸기 하나도 업소.

Is there no one in this room who will go? 이 방에 갈 사람 도모지 업소.

4.

We have no more pears but we have some very nice persimmons. 비논 더 업스나 감은 토흔 거시 외소.

We have no more red ones, but have some black ones. 붉은 거슨 더 업스나 검은 거슨 외소.

I believe I have no more letters to write. 쓸 편지 더 업슬듯 호오.

SEC. 8.—ALL.

1 Signifying *everyone, the whole number, or quantity*—모도, 다.

2 Signifying *the whole duration or extent*,—온, 온통, 일, 흥, or 다.

3 Signifying *the last of a thing*,—뿐 or 만 may be used.

온, 일, 흥 precede their nouns, the rest follow.

1.

You had better throw these all away. 이것 다 배여 버리면 토켓소.

These letters are all for America. 이 편지는 모도 미국으로 가는 거시오.

The cherry blossoms must have fallen off by now. 잉도 싹춘 모도 쉼러졌실 거시오.

- Put all those needles in the box on the shelf. 그 바늘을 모도 선반
우희 잇는 께세 너랴.
- Take out all these books, and arrange them well, in sets, on the book shelves. 께 속에 잇는 책을 다
쇼어 내여셔 책장에
질을 차자 잘 씩 하랴.
- The hoop broke, and every bit of the water ran out. 흥 댕가 흔혀져셔 물이
다 솟아졌소.

2.

- I shall probably be in Sëoul all this winter. 이 온 겨울 동안은 서울
잇솔 듯 호오.
- All next month I must go every day to the palace. 리 월 혼 둘은 불가불
날마다 대궐에 드려가야
호겟소.
- From Nam San, they say almost all of Sëoul can be seen. 남산셔 서울이 거위 다
뵈다고 호오.
- There was not a man in all the village that had ever seen a foreigner 일촌 중에 외국 사람을
본이가 호나도 업소읍
더이다.
- Mr. Song has travelled over nearly all the world. 송석방은 거위 세계를 다
돈넛소.

3.

- Is this all the tea there is? 차가 이 썬 이냐.
- Is this all the flour there is? 밀 가로가 이 썬 이오.

SEC. 9.—SEVERAL.

1 Number :—

(a.) Quite a number,—여러 in its various forms.

(b.) An indefinite number,—몇.

2 Kind :—씩씩, 식식으로, 각.

The distinction made above between 여러 and 몇, is not always adhered to by Koreans. The difficulty with 여러 for “*several*,” is that it may mean a large number of almost indefinite proportion, but this is generally expressed, by the strong stress or emphasis, laid upon the word. The English word “*several*” may also be rendered by the Korean words 두서넛, (*two, three, four*) 서너넛 (*three, four, five*).

1. (a).

There are several pencils in that case. 이 필통 속에 연필이 여러 자로가 있소.

There were several who declined to go. 가 기 슬라 는 사 례 이 여러히 있소 옅 더 이다.

I enquired at several shops but there were none. 여러 전에 차자 보았시나 업소 옅 더 이다.

I've had several dogs since I came to Söoul. 서울 온 후 브러 내게 개가 여러히 있섯소.

A fly has several legs. 파리 안티 발이 여러히오.

1. (b).

We met a coolie just now carrying several parcels. 지금 몇 보롱이 가지고 가는 혼 삭군 맛났소.

He took several boxes to the river this morning.	오늘 아침 강으로 몇 개를 가져 갔소.
We met several pack ponies laden with cash, on the road.	중로 에서 돈 실은 복마 몇 마 봤소.
There seem to be several lame ones among these dogs.	그 개 중에 몇 마 저는 모양이오.

2.

You have several (<i>kinds</i>) beautiful flowers in your garden.	공의 화원에 토은 꽃이 식식이 있소.
Birds build their nests in several ways.	새가 각 모양 으로 보금 자리를 치오.
At this hotel, they have several kinds of food.	이 휴막에는 음식이 식식이 로 있소.
Koreans wear garments of several colors.	조선 사람은 옷을 식식이 로 입소.

SEC. 10.—FEW.

1 Few (*not many*)—적소, 만치안소, which in Korean are verbs, and in rendering *few* can only be used as predicates.

Note.—*To be* with *a few* is rendered in the same way.

2 A few (*a small number*)—몇 or by some indefinite number as 두서넛, or 서너넛.

The particle 수 (*number*) prefixed to Sinico-Korean words also conveys this idea.

Few foreigners speak Korean well.	조선 말을 잘 하는 외국 사람이 적소.
There were only a few there last night, but we had a good time.	어제 밤에 거기 사람이 만치이 아니나 잘 놀 았소.
There were only a few soldiers at the American legation, but they were all brave, and we were not afraid.	미국 공사관에 병티가 만치 아니 하였 것 마는 다 용감하였으니 걱정 업섯소.

2.

Go to the garden and bring me a few small stones.	화원에 가서 잔 돌 몇 가져오너라.
Go and buy me a few cigars.	가서 권연초 두세 개 사오너라.
I went to Pouk Han yesterday with a few friends.	어제 몇 친구 하고 북한 으로 갔소.
A few years ago I was in America.	수년 전에 미국에 있섯소
I will go in a few days.	수일 후에 가섯소.

SEC. 11.—ONE, ONES.

One is rendered in Korean by 것.

Note.—It will have already been noticed, that the Korean use of the equivalent for “one” or “ones” is much more frequent than the English, and hence it is found in many places where we least expect it.

Either red ones or black ones will do.	붉은 거시 던지 검은 거시 던지 쓰섯소.
--	---------------------------

- Neither red ones nor black ones will do. 붉은 거시 던지 검은 거시 던지 다 못 쓰겟소.
- Have not you any (*ones*) a little better? 좀 더 나은 거슨 업소.
- The best ones are all in the godown. 그 중 토흔 거슨 다 광에 드럿소.
- Although even that is good, the one with the cover is better. 그 것 도 토키는 토흐나 두경 잇는 거시 더 토소.
- Is this to-day's (*one*)? 이거시 오늘 거시오.
- Have you any different (*ones*) from this? 이 보다 다른 거시 잇소.

SEC. 12.—OTHER, ANOTHER.

- 1 The rest of—이 외.
- 2 Not the same, separate—다른, or by the adverb 달나.
- 3 Besides—이밖 과, 이외에.
- 4 One more in addition—더, 흥나더.
- 5 The other one of two—흥나, 佐흥나, 다른것, or by a change in the form of the sentence.
- “The one...the other”—흥나흔...흥나흔.
- 6 People generally as contrasted with one's self—놈.
- 7 Again—또, 다시.

1.

See whether the other children don't want some too. 이 외 흥히들 도 달나 흥나 보아라.

Please tell the others to come in too.	이외 사람 드려 도 드려 오라고 하오.
Are the other boxes the same size as this?	이외 께들 도 크기가 이것 쯤소.
The other ones will be done in a month.	이외 거슨 혼돌 만 하면 되겟소.
I'll take another newspaper.	이외 신문지를 보겟소.
You had better take these coolies, you may not be able to get the others.	이외 일꾼은 혹 엇을 수가 업시니 이들을 쓰는 거시 토켓소.

2.

I came by another road.	다른 길로 왔소.
That's another matter.	그거슨 다른 일이오.
Another color would probably be better.	다른 빗치 토플듯 하오.
As I am a Korean I cannot sit down in any other way.	조선 사람 이니 달기논 안질 수가 업소.
He really had another reason for going.	그 사람이 실상은 다른 일이 있셔셔 간거시오.

3.

I have not another cash.	이밖기논 혼돈도 업소.
Isn't there another pencil in that drawer?	그설함 속에 연필이 이것 밖기 업소.

If you intend to study Chinese you must get another teacher, (*besides the present one*). 한어를 비호시려면 이외 청성을 얻어야 할듯 하오.

4.

This bookcase is a little small, I'll have to get another. 이 책장이 조금 적으니 불가불 하나 더 얻어야 하겠소.

It will be all right even though you don't put on another stamp. 인지 하나 더 붙치지 아 니 하셔도 되겠소.

Please order me another copy, of the O Ryun Haing Sil. 오륜형실을 혼질 더 맛초라 고 하오.

Bring me another pencil. 연필 하나 더 가져오너라.

Bring me another cake of ink? 먹 혼장 더 가져오.

5.

Where is the other hammer? 맞치 든 하나 어디 있느냐.

This is too soft you had better take the other one. 이거슨 너무 연하니 다른 거슬 가져가시오.

I gave one to Soun Pogi and one to Eung Whani. 하나흔 슌복이 주고 하나흔 응환이 주었소.

I like this house best, but prefer the other location. 집은 여기가 도흐나 더는 더기가 도소.

6.

Don't give too much credit to what others say. 남의 말을 너무 고지 뜻지 마오.

I don't know what others think, and I don't care. 남은 엇더케 생각 할런지 모르나 무어 시타 던지 관계치 안소.

7.

The news has just arrived, of another victory. 또 이기엿다논 소문 곳 시방 왔소.

Did Mr. Pak say that if he went to Fusan he would send another telegram to Sëoul? 박석방 말이 즈기가 부산 가면 또 서울노 전신 할겟다고 함읍더니잇가.

SEC. 13.—SAME.

1. Not different — By the different parts of the verb **갓소** or **갓함오** (*to be alike*).

2. Not two:—**한, 일**.

1.

Put the same quantity in all the bottles. 각 병에 갓치 너허타.

Those two boys are the same height. 그 두 은희 키가 갓소.

Is "Oltarago" the same as "Olsorago?" 올타라고 와 올소라고와 갓소읍느니잇가.

The meaning is the same, 뜻은 같으나 글씨가 좀
but the letters are a 달소.
little different.

Though you make them of 것혼 가음으로 하되 빛은
the same material, make 다르게 만든다.
them of different colors.

Are Buddhist temples all 절 짓는 법이 대체 다
built on the same general plan? 같소.

I told them both the same 둘 의 게 다 것혼 말을
thing. 낼것소.

It is the same as last year's 작년 병 과 같소.
disease.

2.

Were all these prepared 이거시 다 혼 사롭이 진
by the same man? 거시오.

Can't you two read out of 혼 책 가지고 둘이 읽지
the same book? 못하느냐.

Let us both stop at the 혼 주막에 류하옵시 다.
same hotel.

Are you all from the same 다 일향 이요.
town?

SEC. 14.—MUCH.

1 In affirmative sentences—the different parts of the
verb 만소.

2 In negative sentences—과히 with the negative.

3 Too much—너무, 과히, with and without 만소.

4 So much—그러케 either alone, or with the verb 만소.

5 How much—얼마. About how much—얼마나. Sometimes also another word such as 대개 will be added. If it is desired to call especial attention to the price the word 값 will be used. The Koreans use this word 얼마 in places where in English we would use simply *how*.

1.

Is there much money in that box? 더 께에 돈 만히 드럿소.

Was much rice burned up during the drought last year? 전년 에 감을 적에 곡식이 만히 뒷소.

Do they import much kerosene into Korea? 석유가 조선에 만히 드러 오오.

Is there much fruit in Korea? 조선에 실과 만소.

2.

I don't have much headache. 머리 과히 압흐지 안소.

You have'nt taken much pains with your writing. 글씨 쓰기에 이 과히 쓰지 아니 하였다.

I do not like Korean food very much. 내가 조선 음식 과히 뒷화 하지 아니 함오.

To tell the truth I do not feel much like going. 실상은 과히 가고 싶지 안소.

3.

- Do not drink too much. 술 너무 먹지 마오.
 There is too much sugar in this tea. 차에 설탕이 너무 만소.
 You can not sleep if you drink too much tea. 차를 너무 먹으면 못 자오.
 This is a little too much. 이것 좀 너무 만소.
 You must not spend too much money or you will soon be poor. 돈 너무 만히 쓰지 말아야 쉬이 가난 찬겟소.

4.

- If you eat so much candy you will be sick. 옛 그러게 먹으면 알겟소.
 I trust him so much that I would lend him whatever he should ask. 내가 그를 그러게 믿으니 달라는 대로 빌여 주 겟소.
 You need not take so much pains with that letter. 그 편지 쓰기에 그러게 익쓸 것 업소.
 Do not drink so much wine. 술 그러게 만히 먹지 마오.
 Do not put on so much coal. 석탄 그러게 만히 넣치 마랏.

5.

- How much for the lot? 도합이 갑시 얼마요.
 How much did you give for those pears? 이 비를 얼마 주고 샀소.
 About how much salt is there in this water? 이 물에 소금 얼마나 드럿소.

How much vinegar did you say was left? 초가 얼마 남았다고 하였소.

About how long is that box? 그 께 길기가 대개 얼마나 되오.

How much silk shall I get? 명쥬 얼마 사리릿가.

How much is the annual income of the government? 정부에 일년 소봉이 대개 얼마나 되오.

SEC. 15.—MANY.

The Koreans do not make the distinction between *many* and *much*, that we do. Sometimes it can be done by the interposition of the word 수 (*number*) and 수가 만소, “*the number is much*” means “*there are many*.”

As a general rule however, the simple use of the verb 만소 will answer all purposes and the context will tell whether it is quantity or number that is referred to. There is a difference between *how much* and *how many*.

We find then the following rules.

1 In affirmative sentences—the different parts of the verb 만소; and in negative sentences—the same with the negative.

2 A good many—The word “*good*” is not rendered, 만소 alone is used.

3 A great many—몹시 or 대단히 etc. with 만소.

The English phrase “*a great deal*” is also rendered in the same way.

4 Too many—너무, 과히, etc. with 만소. As was said with regard to “*too much*,” 만소 may be omitted.

5 How many—몇. About how many 몇치나.

1.

Confucius has many disciples. 공자는 제자가 만소.

Many of the Americans have blue eyes. 미국 사람이 눈 푸른
이가 만소.

There are not many iron-clads in the American navy. 미국 해군에 철갑선이
만치 안소.

Many Korean flowers have a very sweet odor. 조선 꽃 도흔 향배 나느
것 만소.

There are not many sheep in Korea. 조선에 양 만치 안소.

I didn't buy many, because they were dear. 비싸 만히 사지 아니
하엿소.

2.

A good many Japanese seem to wear glasses. 일본 사람에는 안경 쓴
이가 만흔 모양 이요.

It seems a good many farmers made money this year. 올 해는 돈 넘긴 농꾼이
만흔 모양 이요.

3.

A great many fishing smacks pass here every morning. 아침마다 어청이 이리
먹우 만히 지나 돈니요.

The fire last night destroyed a great many houses. 어제 밤 화재가 대단히 많은 집을 망쳐 버렸소.

We've used a great deal of coal this year. 올해 석탄 대단히 많이 썼소.

4.

There are too many books in that bookcase. 그 책장에 책이 너무 많소.

There are too many people on that boat, I'm afraid it will sink in such a sea as this. 그 비에 사람이 너무 많으니 그런 바다에 빠질까 념려요.

There are too many chairs in this room, there is no place for the table. 이 방에 의자가 너무 많으니 상 둘데 업소.

There are too many windows in this room, there is no place for a wardrobe. 이 방에 문이 너무 많으니 의장 둘데 업소.

5.

How many pears shall I buy? 비 몇치가 사러잇가.

About how many bottles are left? 병이 몇치가 남았소.

How many days are there in a month? 몇 날이 혼 돌리오.

How many chickens did you order? 병아리 몇 사러잇가.

How many servants do **공이 몇 하인 두오.**
you keep?

How many sons has **김석방이 아들 몇치오.**
Mr. Kim?

SEC. 16.—MORE.

More is rendered into Korean by **더**. Quite often **좀** (*a little*) will be used with it.

When are you going to **언제 브러 일군을 더 두**
put on more men? **랴오.**

If you don't put on more **석탄 더 넣치 아니 하면**
coal, the fire will go out. **불 끄지 겐소.**

I wish I had bought more **이 차를 좀 더 샀더면**
of this tea. **도 좋을 것겐소.**

You can get a good article **돈 더 주면 도흔 거슬**
if you will pay more. **엇을 수가 잇소.**

Which costs the more? **엇 더 거시 갑시 더**
들겐소.

I have not a bit more. **내게 조금도 업소.**

Go and get some more **자셔 얼음 더 엇어 오**
ice. **너라.**

SEC. 17.—MOST.

1. Nearly all—**거 워다.**

2. The greatest of several quantities:—

The Koreans, commonly do not make the distinction between “*more*” and “*most*.” The common way of expressing “*most*” would be by **더** with or without **만소**. Sometimes however, when they wish to be accurate they will use **매일** instead of **더**.

For the superlative degree, see Part II. Chapter VI.
§ II. Sec. 2., and Part I. ¶ 254.

1.

Most foreigners dislike a native chair. 외국 사 례 을 거 워 다
보 고 를 들 희 여 호 오.

Most of you have heard this I suppose. 공 들 은 거 워 다 이 거 술
드 렷 실 듯 호 오.

Although some of them have not yet been told, most of them probably know it. 그 중 에 아 직 알 리 지
아 닌 사 례 도 있 시 나
거 워 다 알 듯 호 오.

I gave most of them five hundred cash each, but some of them left early and did not receive it. 배 가 거 워 다 닷 량 식
죽 었 시 나 더 러 는 일 즉
나 갔 시 나 받 지 아 나
호 였 소.

2.

Which box holds the most? { 어 느 께 더 많 히 들 겠 소.
어 느 께 데 일 많 히
들 겠 소.

Then I will have the most. { 그 러 면 배 가 더 많 히
가 지 오.
그 러 면 배 가 데 일 많 히
가 지 오.

SEC. 18.—ENOUGH.

In rendering the pronominal adjective, *Enough*, the various parts of the verbs 넉넉호오, 족족호오, 자
라오, etc., verbs meaning, “to be sufficient” should properly be used. The Koreans often, however, use

other words or phrases to express the same idea. As, they will say "That much will do," "That is much" etc. When we use the word *enough* in English, we do not always have the idea of "sufficient for a purpose," we often mean "*plenty*," "*a good deal*," and the Koreans in this respect are almost more exact than we. Remembering these facts, we obtain the following rules.

1. Signifying a sufficiency, used without the verb "*to be*," either as simple adjective qualifying a noun, substantively, or as an adverb we may render "*enough*," by 넉넉히, 족족히, 만히.

2. To be enough—넉넉하오, 족족하오, 자라오, etc. or we can use 그만, (*that only*), or 그만큼 (*that much*) with the future of such a verb 쓰오. Negatively—the same with the negative, or a negative verb, as 부족하오 may be used.

3. To do a thing *enough*.

(a.) In affirmative sentences—the adverbial form of the verbs.

(b.) In negative sentences—the same with the negative, or 덜 without the negative.

4. Enough to,—future participle of verb, with 만큼 or 것 followed by the verb; negatively, the same with the negative.

자라오 may also be used.

1.

Thanks, I've had enough 곰압소 마논 만히 먹었소.
already.

How many nails shall I bring? Bring plenty.

Be sure and put enough
sugar in.

2.

Is there enough sugar? 사당이 넉넉 하오.

There is not quite enough sugar in this cake. 이 과자에 사당이 조금 부족 함.

Is this enough? 이 거시 넉넉 흥오.

Six inches will be wide enough. 광이 여섯 치 넉넉 함요.

That's enough. 그 만큼 쓰겠소.

This won't be enough. 이것 못 자라겟소.

Was there enough coal? 석탄 넉넉 흥였소.

3. (a).

We've walked enough now, 지금은 넉넉히 운동 하겠
let's go back. 시니 도라 갑시다.

You've read enough now, 인 제 넉넉히 읽었시니
that will do. 그만 두오.

As the coolies have rested
long enough, let us hurry
on.

일꾼 그만 쉬었으니 어서
갑시다.

3. (b).

Haven't you had enough
to eat yet? 아직 넉넉히 먹지 아니
 했었소.

These potatoes are not boiled enough yet. 이 감자를 아직 덜 삶았소.

You have'nt taken enough medicine yet. 약 아직 덜 먹었소.

4.

Have you enough stamps to put on that letter? 그 편지 붙칠 만큼 인지 있소.

Have we coal enough to last till next spring? 뽕년 봄 석지 쓸 석 한 있소.

Have you studied into the subject enough to really understand it? 실상 그 일을 알 만큼 샅고 하 였소.

We had enough plums to send some to all our friends. 우리에게 즈도는 각 친구 의 게 보낼 만큼 있 셧소.

We went to see them and instead of finding them starving, we found they had enough rice, stored away in bags to last them a whole month. 우리가 보러 간즉 굶지 아니 하고 오히려 혼돌 쓸 찰이 섬에 넉 것 있는 거슬 차섯소.

CHAPTER VI.

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ I.

The previous chapter having treated of pronominal adjectives, there remains for us here, simply qualifying, or descriptive adjectives. As will be seen in Part I, Korean has but few true descriptive adjectives, and as a consequence, in translating English into Korean, adjectives must be variously rendered.

1 Used attributively—either a simple adjective will be used, or a past relative participle, which will then, as in English precede the noun it qualifies.

2 Used predicatively—the verbal form in the appropriate tense will be used.

Note.—When two or more adjectives qualify the same word, they will be rendered by the stems of the adjectival verb with **고**, and the last only will be inflected. It must also be remembered that often where we use the attributive, the Korean uses the predicative form, and vice versa.

1.

This is a rainy day.

오늘 비오는 날 이오.

Those are very pretty
flowers.

그 것 매우 모흔 꽃 치오

My sister has dark eyes.	우리 누님은 눈 알이 검소.
That is a large house.	그 거시 큰 집이오.
Koreans wear black hats and white coats.	조선 사름은 검은 갓 쓰고 흰 옷 입고.
You will need a thick over- coat.	훈 듯거은 두루막이 의 셔야 쓰겟소.
Koreans like bright colors.	조선 사름 환흔 빛 도화 향오.
That is a good fire.	그 것 도흔 불이오.
There is a large white dog in the garden.	화원에 훈 크고 흰 개 잇소.
He wears a heavy gold chain.	훈 무거은 금 사슬을 쓰오.
My mother sent me a silver cup.	우리 어머니가 훈은 잔 을 보냈소.

2.

Japanese are very small.	일본 사름 댜우 적소.
American women are tall.	미국 녀편네 들이 키 크오.
The road was very muddy.	길은 대단이 즐엇소.
Good coal is plentiful in Korea.	도흔 석탄 조선에 만소.
Those chairs are very strong, but they are very heavy.	그 교 의논 댜우 둔둔 헛것마논 무겁소.
That dress is very pretty.	그 옷시 댜우 모향오.
That overcoat is thick.	그 두루 막이 듯겟소.

Most Korean colors are **조선 빛은 거위 다 환**
bright. **하오.**

That fire is good. 그 불이 토소.

That gold chain is heavy. 그 금 사슬 무겁소.

He was a tall, strong,
handsome man.

키크고 힘 세고 어엿분
사름 이었소.

I had a large, gentle, and fleet Chinese pony.

배 게 혼 크고 순 하고
빠른 중국 말 의 념소.

§ II.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES
AND ADVERBS.

SEC. 1.—THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

As was seen in Part I. in the chapter on adjectives, the idea of comparison is expressed largely by Koreans by the use of the simple positive. If there are a number, and it is desired to know which is the best, the Korean picking out simply one, and saying “ This is good,” will mean that it is the best. Similarly where there are only two “ Of these two this is good ” means, *This is the better*. There are however, cases where the expression of the comparative or superlative degree is necessary to the sense.

The comparative degree may be expressed by such words as 더 (*more*) 낫소 (*to be better*), 보다 (*than*) 예석 (*from*). In connection with the use of these words, we must always remember, that in Korean the governing word always follows the word it governs, and the 보다 or 예석, will refer then to the word which precedes it

and not to the word that follows. 더 being an adverb, precedes the adjective or verb it qualifies, and we should remember that as a rule Koreans do not use 더 with 보다 or 예석, either one alone, being sufficient. For the rendering of the English comparative degree we obtain then the following rules:—

1 Signifying in a greater degree—더 preceding the adjective or neuter verb.

2 When two different objects are compared:—

(a.) When *than* is expressed—보다 or 예석 affixed to the noun having the quality in the lesser degree; and the adjective in the positive.

(b.) When *than* is not expressed—the postposition 는 may be affixed to one or both of the nouns, or 중에 (*among*) may be used with the positive: or 더 may be affixed to the adjective.

3 *The more—the more*, marking the introduction of two correlative clauses, may be rendered into Korean, by 수록—더욱. The Koreans quite commonly however omit the latter and use 수록 alone to express this idea.

1.

Would it not be well to tie 그 보통이를 너 돈돈이
that bundle tighter? 묶논 거시 토치 안겜소.

You must be more ener- 더 부즈런 하야 하겜소.
getic.

I wish you had waked me 좀 더 일찍 석왓 너먼
a little earlier. 토화 지오.

They are pretty well made, 꽤 잘 만든 듯 하나 좀
but I wish they were 더 적었 더면 도화
a little smaller. 지요.

2. (a).

Fusan is hotter than Sēoul. 부산 서울 보다 더워.
The days are a good deal 여름 에는 히가 겨울
longer in summer than 보다 더우 기요.
in winter.
He is a good deal taller 안희 보다 키더우 크요.
than his wife.
Jinrikshas are easier than 인력거가 교군 보다 편
chairs. 하요.
I am about three years 내가 동생 보다 소년
older than my brother. 우히요.

2. (b).

This is the prettier but the 이 거슨 모흐것 마는 그
other is the cheaper. 거슨 싸요.
Of these two houses, the 그 두 집 중에 갓가 온
one nearest here is the 집이 낫소.
higher.
Mine is the stronger horse. 내 말이 힘 세요.
This is the better pen. 이 붓시 낫소.
Mine was the greater fault. 내 허물 더 크요.
My sister is the prettier. 우리 누님 더 모흐요.

3.

The quicker the better.	빨라 수록 토소.
The more the better.	만흔 수록 토소.
The more one gets, the more he wants.	더 얻을 수록 더 가지고 십소.
The more I study, the less I seem to myself to know.	공부를 할 수록 생각에 더 무식한 듯 함소.

SEC. 2.—THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

As was noticed above, unless the sense requires it, Koreans do not employ the superlative, the positive answering all the purposes. If it is necessary, it may be rendered by the ordinal 데일 (*the first*), prefixed to the adjective.

Which is the best hotel in Söoul?	서울에 어느 주막이 데일 토소.
The first plan seems to me the best.	처음 계교가 내 생각에 데일 인듯 함소.
He is the richest man in America.	미국에 데일 부자 요.
He was the bravest soldier in the regiment.	진 중에 데일 담대 한 사람 이었소.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ADVERB.

English adverbs may be rendered into Korean in various ways. Methods for forming adverbs from adjectives, with their various distinctions, may be found in the chapter on Adverbs, in the "Grammatical Notes." We have not here then to deal with these, but will simply consider how a few of the English adverbs of *place, time, manner*, etc., are rendered into Korean.

§ I.—ADVERBS OF PLACE.

To Korean primitive adverbs, the various postpositions can be affixed.

SEC. 1.—HERE.

1 Signifying this place—여기, 이리, 이곳 etc.

2 Signifying this neighborhood—이근처.

1.

Here it is.

여기요.

Here is where I lost my watch.

여기가 내 시계 잃혀 버
리던 데요.

Here is where Son Doli fell into the river. 여기가 손돌이 강에 빠
지던 데요.

Is the book you bought yesterday here? 어제 산 책이 여기 있소.

Sou Dongi and Sou Jini were here just now. 슈동이 하고 슈진이 하고
즉금 여기 왔다 갔소.

Do they make pottery here? 여기서 사기 굽소.

Do they generally drill the soldiers here? 병티들을 대체 여기서
조련 함오.

Has'nt some one been writing here? 여기서 누가 무엇 쓰지
아니 함였소.

Bring it here! 이리 가져 오너라.

Come here with the baby! 어린 응희 이리 데려오
너라.

Tell Nomi to come here. 놈이 데려 이리 오라고
함오.

Then we must certainly ride in chairs from here. 그러하니 여기서 불가불
교군을 등야 쓰겟소.

How far is it from here to the next hotel? 여기서 이다음 휴막 석지
얼마나 머오.

2.

Are there any deer about here nowadays? 이 근처에 이새이도 사
슴이 있소.

Do they not have a flower show here to-night? 오늘 밤에 이 근처에 꽃
적즈 벌이지 안소.

SEC. 2.—THERE.

There—더기, 더리, 거기, 거리. The difference between 더 and 그 noticed in Part I. ¶ 72 extends to these adverbs.

There's a man with a dog and a gun. 더기 총 가지고 개 데리고 있는 사람 있소.

There have been fires there, very many times this year. 더기 금년에 불이 워낙 여러번 났섯소.

I hope Mr. Chyeng will wait there till we come. 우리 오기 까지 정석방 거기서 기다리면 토켓소.

Do they make much kangchang there? 거기서 간장 만히 만든다오.

What kind of a ship is that they are building there? 더기서 만든다는 거시 무슨 배오.

That's all right. Put it down there. 관계치 안소 거기 놓아두오.

I think most of the silk thread comes from there. 배 생각에는 대례 명주 실 모도 거기서 나오느라 아오.

SEC. 3.—WHERE.

1 Interrogative—어디, 어느곳.

2 Relative—되 with relative participle.

3 Somewhere—어디, 어디든지, 어디선지.

4 Everywhere, wherever,—by 던지 with the relative participle; by two negatives; or by such words as **사방** (*four sides*), **곳곳**, **처처** etc.

5 Anywhere—아모디나, 아모디던지, 어디던지.

6 Nowhere—아모디도 with negative.

1.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| Where does the washer-woman live? | 마전 집이 어디요. |
| Where was it that you met Mr. Kim this morning? | 오늘 아침에 김석방 맞
나던 터가 어디요. |
| Where is this flower pot cracked? | 이꽃 분이 어디가 금이
갔소. |
| Where is Mr. Yi. | 리석방 어디 있소. |
| Where is the spoon I left on the table? | 상우희 논 슈가락 어디
있소. |
| Where is the shirt I sent to the wash? | 빨너 보낸 속 적삼 어디
있소. |
| Where did you buy this fish? | 이 생청은 어디서 샀소. |
| Do you know where these grapes were grown? | 이 포도가 어디서 자란
지요. |
| Where's my dictionary gone? | 내 즈뎨이 어디 갔소. |
| Where were you going when I met you yesterday? | 어제 만날 때에 어디
가느 길이었소. |
| Where does the best rice come from? | 메일 도흔 찰이 어디서
나오. |

2.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| Is this where we take the boat? | 여기가 뱃 등느 터요. |
|---------------------------------|--------------|

Here's where we have to show our passports. 여긔서 빙쿤 보논 티요.

Sit where you can hear. 들닐 티로 안지오.

3.

Is'nt there a bridge somewhere on the river? 어 디 던 지 강 에 다리 업소.

Are there not fireworks somewhere to-night? 오 놀 밤 에 어 디 천 지 불노롬 흥지 안소.

It seems to me I saw a second hand one at some book store on the main street. 어 디 천 지 큰 길 책사 에셔 늑은 거술 본 듯 흥오.

He has gone somewhere. 어 디 갔소.

He put the book somewhere, and has forgotten where it is. 책은 어 디 노코 논티를 니졌소.

4.

He smokes tobacco wherever he goes. 어 디를 가 던 지 담비논 먹소.

He makes friends wherever he goes. 어 디를 가 던 지 친구가 생기오.

Mosquitoes are everywhere in Japan. 일본셔 모 기 가 업논티 업소,

Steamboats go everywhere now. 지금은 화륜선이 곳곳이 가오.

There are plenty of merchants everywhere. 처처에 장소가 만소.

The cat has looked every- 고양이가 샷기를 소면
where for her kittens. 으로 차 샷소.

I am lonely wherever I go. 아모 디 가던지 심심하오.

5.

I can't find my handker- 배 슈건 아모 디셔 던지
chief anywhere. 차 질수 업소.

Of course water runs down 본터 물은 어디 던지 노준
hill anywhere. 디로 흐르오.

You can travel anywhere 빙쿄 가 지고 일본에
in Japan with a pass- 아모 디 던지 돈너갓소.
port.

6.

He is nowhere in the 집에는 아모 디도 업소.
house.

There were no fish any- 오늘 아침 에는 성천이
where this morning. 아모 디도 업섯소.

Foreigners can live no- 외국 사롬은 흉상 항구
where except in the 외에는 아모 디도 못
open ports. 사오.

§ II.—ADVERBS OF TIME.

SEC. 1.—ALWAYS.

1 Invariably—언제던지.

2 Continually—늘, 느루.

3 From the beginning—본터 with or without 지금
사지.

4 At all times—항상, 일상.

5 Signifying *all*—다.

1.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Is June always rainy ? | 륙월은 언제 던지 장마요. |
| Does the king always have a guard ? | 님금 씨논 언제 던지 호위 병이 되시고 외소. |
| I suppose the waves are not always as high as this. | 내 생각 에는 풍랑 이 언제 던지 이 곳 처 좁지 아닐 듯 하오. |
| Do you always put out your light before you get in bed ? | 언제 던지 침상에 들기 전에 불 끄오. |

2.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| Are you always in pain ? | 느루 압호오. |
| Is the earth always in motion ? | 땅이 느루 동호오. |
| Before you had the small-pox were you always well ? | 역질노 알기 전에는 느루 평안 하엿소. |
| Is a bird always on her nest when she is hatching her young ? | 새가 낳기 칠 때 에는 느루 그 보금 자리에 외소. |
| Is a sentinel always walking when he is on guard ? | 순경 군이 순경 돌 때 에는 느루 것소. |

3.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| Have you always lived in Sēoul ? | 본리 서울씨 지금 서지 살앗소. |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|

The English have always been good sailors. 영국 사 례 본 리 사 공
노릇 잘 함요.

Have there always been eight provinces in Korea? 본 리 조 천 에 팔 도 가 있
섯소.

4.

God is always the same. 상 대 는 일 상 한 모 양
이요.

It is always best to do right. 올 게 함 는 거 손 흥 상
토소.

I am always glad to see that man. 그 사 례 보 기 흥 상 반 갑 소.

He is always telling lies. 일 상 거짓 말 함요.

That baby is always crying. 그 어 린 것 흥 상 울 더라.

Although the Koreans are always eating rice, they never refuse it. 조 천 사 례 일 상 밥 먹 으 디
함 번 도 슬 치 안 소.

5.

Are crows always black? 가 마 귀 는 다 검 소.

Do mapoos always wear felt hats? 마 부 는 다 빙 거 지 쓰 요.

SEC. 2.—WHENEVER.

1 At whatever time—언 제 던 지 or 어 느 때 던 지.

2 Every time—때 마 다 with the relative participle.
The above may also be used, but this is the better.

1.

I'll start whenever it is convenient to you. 어 느 때 던 지 공 식 맞 는
때 에 켜 나 겠 소.

Can I borrow your dictionary whenever I send for it? 어느 때든지 가질러 보내면 조 편을 빌 수 있겠소.

We must go on board whenever the ship comes in. 어느 때든지 배가 드려 오거든 등야 하겠소.

Be ready whenever Mr. Yi comes. 어느 때든지 리석방 오거든 차리게 하오.

2.

Whenever I go to Chemulpo it rains. 체물포 가 논때 마다 비가 오오.

He gets angry whenever he argues. 론난 할 때 마다 성이 나오.

Every time I read it, it seems harder. 읽을 때 마다 더 어려운 모양 이오.

I have a headache whenever I smoke. 담뭍 먹을 때 마다 두통이 있소.

SEC. 3.—GENERALLY, USUALLY.

Generally, usually—흔이, 대개, 대더.

What kind of a pen do you generally use? 흔이 무슨 붓을 쓰오.

Cholera generally comes in the summer. 쥐똥이 흔이 여름에 있소.

We generally have tiffin at one. 흔이 한 시에 점심을 먹소.

Sometimes I cannot sleep 밤 되도록 안 자는 때
all night. 잊소.

Sometimes not one of the 날 마 다 빙호 는 거슬
boys knows his lesson. 아는 인희가 흥나도 업
는 때 잊소.

SEC. 6.—SELDOM.

Seldom—**별로** followed by the negative.

I seldom have a cold. 나는 감기가 별로 아니
드오.

I seldom smoke in the 나는 집에서 담배 별로
house. 아니 먹소.

I have seldom seen him of 이소이는 그 사람을 별로
late. 만나지 못 하였소.

SEC. 7.—NEVER, EVER.

1 Temporal :—

(a.) On no occasion, not once—**재** or **때** with the relative participle. If emphatic, **한 번도** may be used.

(b.) Invariably not—**언제든지**, followed by the negative.

(c.) At no future time—**아모 때 이라도** with the negative.

(d.) Never before—**그전 에는** with the negative.

2 Emphatic :—

(a.) Not at all—**아조, 도모지**, with the negative.

(b.) Positively not—**일덩코, 작덤코**, with the negative.

Never do a thing like that again. 다시는 일딩코 그런 일 마라.

I can never consent to such a thing as that. 그런 일은 일딩코 허락할 수 업소.

2. (c).

He can never study Japanese. 세상 업서도 일본 말 공부할 수 업겟소.

He can never live unless he takes medicine. 약 먹기 전에는 세상 업서도 살수 업소.

I believe I'll never be able to learn Korean. 나는 암만 흥여도 조선 말을 배울수 업을 것 겐소.

You'll never find it without a light. 불 업시논 암만 흥여도 찾을 수 업소리이다.

Can you never forgive him? 암만 흥여도 용서 할수 업소.

SEC. 8.—AGAIN.

1 Another time—또 or 다시.

2 Once more—또 한번.

3 To do over again—새로 or 곱쳐.

1.

I'll call again. 또 오리이다.

Be sure and call again. 부디 또 오시오.

Do not do that again. 다시 그 것 하지 마라.

It just stopped raining, and it is raining again. 비가 그쳤다가 또 오오.

2.

Sing that song again. 또 한번 그 노래 하시오.
 If you don't understand 모르시면 또 한번 빌어
 I will explain it again. 드리 리이다.

3.

You will have to do it over 새 로 하여야 쓰겟소.
 again.
 You will have to iron these 그 옷을 껏쳐 다루리 질
 clothes again. 하여야 쓰겟소.
 The legs of this table are 이 상 다리 껏지 아니
 not alike, you must make 하니 껏쳐 문드려야
 it over again. 쓰겟소.

SEC. 9.—WHEN.

1 Interrogative :—

- (a.) At what time—언제, 어느때.
 (b.) Until what time—언제까지, 어느때까지.
 How long—얼마.
 (c.) About when—언제나, 어느때쯤.
 (d.) At what hour—어느시.

2 Relative :—

- (a.) At the time—때 or 직 with relative participle.
 (b.) By the time—때 밋쳐 with relative participle.
 (c.) After the time—후 with relative participle ;
 sometimes 거든 will be used with one of the
 simple tenses.

1. (a).

When did you write this letter ?	이편지를언제 썼소.
When do you intend going to Chemulpo ?	चेमुल्पो 에 어느때 가려고 하오.
When would you like it to be done ?	언제 하면 공의 묵음에 맞 겠소.
When was that ?	그 것 언제 일 이오.
When did foreigners come to Korea ?	언 제 브러 외국 사롬이 조선에 왔소.
When did Keuija live ?	괴주가 어느때 사롬 이오.

1. (b).

Till when can you wait ?	어느때 까지 기다리겠소.
How much longer can you wait ?	어느때 까지 나더 기다리 겠소.
About how much longer do you intend to be in Sēoul ?	석 울 얼마나 더 계실 경 영이오.

1. (c).

About when will it be done ?	언제나 되겠소.
About when does the rainy season begin ?	장마가 어느때 즘 시작 하오.

1. (d).

When shall I wake you Sir ?	어느시 쉬여 드리 오리 릿가.
-----------------------------	---------------------

When do you retire? 어 느 시 기침 흥시 느니
외가.

When do you tiffin? 어 느 시 덤심 잡수시
느니외가.

2. (a).

Which of the boys was it 부를 적에 대답 흥던
that answered when you
called? 흥히가 누구요.

I will send word when I 제물로 편지 할때에 기별
write to Chemulpo? 흥겟소.

When the Japanese am- 일본 대신이 드러 올때
bassador comes will he
go to see the King? 대군 슈를 뵈오러 가
겟소.

He broke it just when it 막 다 될만흔 때에 석르
was about done. 렸소.

2. (b).

It will certainly be done 오실 때 밋쳐 명명 다 되
when you come. 겟소.

The letters must all be 석신군이 올때 밋쳐서 편
written by the time the
postman comes. 지를 다 써 두어야
쓰겟소.

What did he say when he 잡혔실 때에 무어시라고
was arrested? 흥읍더니외가.

2. (c).

When you have swept 방을 다 쓸고 훑친 후에
and dusted the room 문 닫아라.
shut the door.

When Sou Dongi comes back, tell him to put these jars in the box. 슈동이 온 후에 이 항아리 들을 궤에 너타고 하오.

When this sugar is gone I will buy more. 이 사당이 다 업거든 더 사겟소.

SEC. 10.—WHILE.

While—동안에, 사이에, 적에.

While the chair coolies were eating we climbed the mountain. 보교군이 밥 먹을 동안에 우리가 산에 올라 갔소.

While I was in the country I studied hard. 식골 외솔 적에 공부 만히 하였소.

Please do not talk just now while I am writing a letter. 자금 나 편지 쓸 적에 잔 소리 말아 주오.

While I was standing in front of the monastery, a priest came out. 절 압회 석실 동안에 중이 나왔소 읍더이다.

A while ago, while we were coming it was very cold. 아까 올 적에 매우 춥소 읍더이다.

While you are studying do not play. 공부 할적에 작 란 하지 마오.

SEC. 11.—AS.

1 When—, 적에, 제, 때에.

2 Indicating simultaneous action—면적 affixed to verbal stem.

3 Taking advantage of the opportunity—길에 with relative participle.

4 On the way—**다가** with verbal stem. **길에** may also be used here. **다가** indicates an interruption and often something unexpected.

1.

Do the men-of-war always fire a salute as they leave port? 군함이 항구에 나갈때마다례로물긋소.

We got home just as it began to rain. 비가 막 올때에 집에 도라 왔소.

The postman came just as I was finishing my letter. 편지를 다 막 못칠 때에 석신 군이 왔소옵디이다.

2.

I will read as I ride. 물 듣고 가면석 보겠소.

As you read, notice carefully the writing of the characters. 읽으 면석 글씨 쓴 거슬 자세히 보겠소.

According to Korean custom they do not talk as they eat. 조선 법에는 밥 먹으면석 말 아니 함요.

3.

As you are going to Chong No, call chair coolies. 종로 가는 길에 교군 불너라.

As you are mending it, you had better put in a new lock. 못치는 길에 새 잠을쇠 새지 두면 되겠다.

As you are going home, 덕에 가는 길에 거기 좀
please call there. 다녀 가요.

4.

As we sailed up the river 강에 올라 가다가 삼기석
we stopped at Samkai. 지체 하였소.

He told me that story as 체물문 가다가 그 이야
we went to Song Do. 기 하였소.

As I was going to the 대궐 가다가 종로에서
palace I met Mr. Yi at 리석방을 뵈었소.
Chong No.

As I was coming up to 서울 올라 오다가 오리
Sēoul I stopped at Ori- 골석 머물렀소.
cole.

SEC. 12.—THEN.

1. At that time,—그때, 그때에, 그때는.
2. Till that time,—그때까지.
3. By that time,—그때에, (*indefinite*) 그때 즈음.
4. After that time,—그후 or 그때부터.
5. At that point,—그다음.

1.

Will you be here then? 그 때에 여길 잊게소.

Then there were Buddhist 그 때에는 절이 팔도에
Monasteries in all the 있었소.
provinces.

The people paid their taxes 그 때에 백성들이 구실
in rice then. 을 찰노 뵈었소.

2.

Leave it here till then.	그 때 까지 여기 두오.
I will be at home till then.	그 때 까지 집에 있겠소.
We had better give it up till then.	그 때 까지 그만 두는 거 시 토겠소.

3.

Then the boys will be old enough to work for themselves.	그 때에 은희가 제 손 으로 버러 먹을 만큼 크겠소.
Then there will be rail-roads.	그 때 즈음 철로가 있겠소.
Will you be ready then?	그 때 즈음 다 준비가 되겠소.

4.

Then the wind blew so hard, we could not go and came back.	그 후는 바람이 대단 히 여섯 가지 못 하고 도라 왔소.
Then we got in a boat and went to see the fire works.	그 후에 비를 듣고 승 객 전 구경 하러 갔 섯소.
Then I will go to the palace.	그 후에 대궐에 드려 가겠소.
Then I studied.	그 후 브럼 내가 공부 하섯소.
From then on I stayed here.	그 후 브럼 여기 있섯소.

5.

What did you say then? 그 다음 무엇이 라고 하였소.

Then I asked him another question. 그 다음 다른 말을 무려 보았소.

SEC. 13.—Now.

1. At the present time :—

(a.) Definite,—시방, 지금.

(b.) Indefinite,—근리, 근일, 이사이.

2. Now as opposed to formerly—the same with 눈

3. By this time already,—인제.

4. Next,—이다음에.

5. Than before,—전보다 or 아까보다.

1. (a).

Is not Mr. Song in Korea now? 지금 송석방이 조선에 업소.

He is out at present, Sir. 지금 출입 하였 습니 이다.

We are just out of it now. 시방 못춤 다 썼소.

Kerosene is very high now. 시방 석유가 덕우 비쌌요.

1. (b).

There are a good many mad dogs about now. 근리 밋친 개가 만흔 모양 이요.

Nobody seems to make much money now. 근일 에는 누구 던지
리 남기 지 못 흥는
모양 이오.

2.

Nowadays Koreans don't wear the large hat. 이소이는 조선 사름이 큰
갓을 쓰지 아니 흥오.

The Japanese government tolerates Christianity nowadays. 이소이는 일본 정부 에셔
예수교 흥는 거슬 모
르논 테흥오.

3.

Most of them will have been sold by this time. 인제 거워 다 팔앗 겠소.

Your house must be about done now. 공의 집 역소는 인제 다
못차실 듯 흥오.

It's too late now. 인제 느꼈소.

It would be useless to send for the doctor now. 의원 부르러 보내여 도
인제 쓸티 업소.

You had better apologize now. 인제는 사죄 흥는 거시
올겟소.

They will probably be here directly now. 인제 곧 올듯 흥오.

It is boiled enough now. 인제 다 삶엇 겠다.

Tea will be ready directly now. 인제 차가 곧 다 되겟소.

4.

Sou Pongi will recite now. 이 다음에 슈봉이 외오
겻소.

We will read Chinese now. 우리들이 이 다음에 진서
빅호겻소.

5.

The tide is running out 아싸 보다 조슈가 더 켜
more rapidly now. 르게 나가오.

I am in much better health 전 보다 내 몸이 더 편
now. 호오.

We are having less rain 전 보다 비 덜 오오.
now.

SEC. 14.—ALREADY.

1. At the time spoken of,—힘 의, 발석.

2. Prior to the time spoken of,—이왕.

3. Equivalent to *so soon* expressive of surprise,—
어느 사이.

Note.—With this last 발석 also may be used.

1.

The wind has already be- 발석 바람이 불기 시작
gun to blow. 호엿소.

I have already applied for 힘 의 빙료 를 청호 엿소.
a passport.

He says he has been waiting for about an hour already. 벌써 한시 동안 이나 기다렸다고 하였더라.

I was going to give the shoemaker a blowing up, but they were already done. 갓바치를 쑤지자고 하였더니 벌써 다 문득렸소.

I have had plenty already. 벌써 그만 먹었소.

2.

As I have already explained several times. 이왕 여러번 일렀거니와.

He has already declined two or three times. 이왕 이삼차례 슬라고 하였더라.

3.

Have you finished already? 어는 소이 다 하였소.

Have they come already? 어는 소이 왔소.

Are the cherry trees in blossom already? 어는 소이 벚꽃이 피었소.

SEC. 15.—FORMERLY, USED TO.

Formerly, used to—근본, 전에, 더그번에.

Formerly all ships were made of wood. 근본 비를 다 나무로 문득렸소.

There used to be no jinrikshas in Korea. 조선에 근본은 인력거가 없었소.

It used to be thought that the sun went round the earth. 전에 히가 땅을 도는 줄 알았소.

There used to be a temple here. 더그번에 여기 절이 있었소.

Formerly foreigners could not live in Sëoul. 이전 에는 외국 사림들이 석물석 살지 못했소.

SEC. 16.—HITHERTO.

Hitherto—이때까지, 지금까지.

Where have you lived hitherto? 이때 까지 어디서 살았소.

What have you studied hitherto? 이때 까지 무어를 공부했소.

As I have lived without eating meat hitherto, I will not eat it now. 지금 까지 고기 안 먹고 살았으니 안 먹겠소.

SEC. 17.—RECENTLY, OF LATE.

Recently, of late—이사이, 근리, 접때.

Have you read any new books lately? 근리 무슨 새 책 이나 읽었소.

The government has recently built a new custom house. 정부 에서 이사이 새로 하관을 지었소.

Did I not see you lately in Japan? 접때 일본서 보지 아니했소.

The king has not come out lately. 이소 이논 남금 거동
아니 하였소.

SEC. 18.—AGO.

1. Ago—**전, 전에.**

2. Long ago,—**오래전.** The Koreans generally, however, render this by the relative participle of the verb, with **지** or **재** followed by the verb **오락오**, *to be long (temporal)*.

3. Several days ago,—**일전에.**

4. A little while ago,—**아까.**

5. Just a minute ago,—**인재, 지금, 시방.**

1.

He died three years ago. **삼년 전에 죽었소.**

I wish I had written a month ago. **한 달 전에 편지를 하였
더면 도록 번 하였소.**

How many years ago was Sēoul built? **서울이 몇히 전에 되었소.**

2.

I saw him a long while ago. **오래 전에 보았소.**

It was made long ago. **문돈 재가 오락오.**

He promised to lend it long ago. **발석 빌니 마고 상약 한
재가 오락오.**

I knew it long ago. **한 지가 오락오.**

3.

There was a dealer here 일전에 장소가 고향 북치
the other day with some 를 가지고 왔소.
very pretty fans.

4.

I sent him to the office a 아씨 편지 를 보내 타고
while ago to mail the 석신 관에 보내 었소.
letters.

Mr. Kim was here an hour 아씨 김석방이 그 족하
or two ago with his 향고 왔소 읍 더 이다.
nephew.

5.

As I told you a minute 인제 말씀 한 대로.
ago—

I saw him ride by here a 지금 이리 듣고 지나
few minutes ago. 가는 거슬 보았소.

SEC. 19.—JUST NOW.

Just now—곳, 곳시방, 시방, 금방 etc.

I have just been seeing 곳지금 기생이 춤 추는
some dancing girls per- 가슬 보고 왔소.
form.

The clock has just struck. 즈명종이 금방 쳤소.

When I've just given him 금방 혼량 주엇 논디 또
a hundred cash will he 달나 호오.
ask more?

SEC. 20.—STILL, YET.

Still, yet—그저, 아직, 아직도.

Are you still sick? 그저 편치 안소.

This pail isn't full yet. 이 통이 아직 도 차지
아니 하였소.

Isn't dinner ready yet? 저녁 아직 도 (그저) 안
되었소.

SEC. 21.—TILL, UNTIL.

1 Time :—

(a.) Up to—까지.

(b.) Before—전에.

2 Degree—도록 with the verbal stem.

1. (a).

Wait till he comes. 오기 까지 기다리오.

I read till dark. 어둡기 까지 읽었소.

I must wait till twenty five minutes of five. 예시 삼십오분 까지
기다리셔야 쓰겟소.

1. (b).

I can't go until ten minutes past five. 오시 십분 전에는 가지
못 하였소.

I can't leave home until the middle of next month. 다음 달 보름 즈음 전에는
집에서 쉴 수 업소.

2.

I read till I was tired.	곧 ^ㅎ 도록 읽었소.
Don't bend it till it breaks.	부러지 ^{도록} 휘지 마오.
He pulled the cat's tail till she bit him.	물니 ^{도록} 고양이 꼬리를 잡아 ^{드렸} 소.

SEC. 22.—BY AND BY.

By and by—^있다가 with future tense for future, and past tense for past time.

By and by bring me some hot water.	^있 다가 더운 물 가져 오너라.
By and by go to the post-office for me.	^있 다가 석션판에 다녀 주오.
By and by let's study.	^있 다가 공부 ^ㅎ 읍시다.
By and by we met a chair.	좁 ^있 다가 고운을 만났소.
There were no chair coolies in Chemulpo, and as it was hard to walk up, by and by having met a jinriksha on the way, I rode up.	체물포에 고군이 업서서 거러 올라 오기에 몹우 어렵더니 좁 ^있 다가 길에서 인력거 를 만나 서 ^들 고 올라 왔소.

SEC. 23.—SOON.

1. 쉬 or 쉬이 or some such phrase as 일간, 오라 지 아니 ^ㅎ여, 얼마 아니 ^ㅎ여 etc.

2. As soon as:—The verbal stem with ^면서, followed by such a word as ^곧, 즉시, etc. Whether past, present or future, the verbal stem is used, and the time

marked by the tense of the principal verb. The same effect will be produced by the use of the copulative conjunctions, in the same way. This idea may also be expressed by use of the relative participle with **대로**.

1.

They say there will soon be a railroad to Sēoul.	쉬이 석울 석지 열로를 싼다 흠읍 더어다.
The steamer will be in, in a few days.	일간 화륜선이 드려 오 겟소.
We must start soon.	쉬 석나야 흠겟소.
It will stop raining very soon.	비가 곧 굿치겟소.
The rain came down in torrents and in a few minutes the roof began to leak.	비가 급히 솟아지 더니 얼마 아니 흠여석 집옹이 석기 시작 흐엿소.
Supper will soon be ready.	오타지 아니 흠여석 저 녁 다 되겟소.
I will soon go to America to study.	오타지 아니 흠여석 미국 으로 공부 흠려 드려 가겟소.

2.

I take a bath as soon as I get up.	니려나 먼석 즉시 목욕 한다.
As soon as they get on board they begin to smoke.	화륜선에 오른 먼석 즉시 담뱃 먹기를 시작 함오.

He died as soon as he heard it. 드루 면서 곧 죽었소.

As soon as he took the medicine he got better. 약 먹으 면서 즉시 낫
졌소.

I'll go as soon as I have dined. 저녁 먹고 곧 가겠소.

I'll have a bath as soon as it's ready. 목욕 물이 다 되는 대로
곧 오겠소.

SEC. 24.—DIRECTLY, AT ONCE.

Presently—지금, 시방, etc., may be used : immediately—즉시, 곧, 곧지금 etc., will be needed.

I'll come directly. 지금 오겠소.

The bell will ring directly. 인제 인경 치겠소.

Let me know what he says immediately. 그 사람이 무어시 타고
하는 거슬 곧 기별
하오.

Serve breakfast at once. 아침 곧 올녀타.

Send that man away at once. 그 사람 즉시 내여 보
내타.

SEC. 25.—BEFORE.

전에. The same word is used with nouns or verbs, but the English verb limited by *before*, takes the form of the verbal noun in 기.

1.

We must start before ten. 열시 전에 떠나야 하겠소.

Let us have tiffin before we go. 떠나기 전에 점심 먹읍
시다.

I can't start for the country before the mail comes in. 우편 편지가 오기 전에 식을 써나지 못 하겠소.

I want to speak to him before he goes to market. 저곳에 가기 전에 말 좀 하고 십소.

SEC. 26.—AFTER, SINCE.

1 With a verb or noun—후에. The verb limited by *after*, takes the form of the past relative participle and precedes 후에. Quite often this same idea is expressed by the simple verbal stem, with the conjunction 고.

2 Afterwards may be expressed by 후에논, 그 후에 etc.

3 Signifying *past*—by a form of the verb 지나오 (*to pass*).

1.

It began to rain after we passed Oricole. 오리골 지난 후에 비가 시작 하였소.

After the war was over, most of the troops returned to China. 싸움이 지난 후에 군수들이 거위 다 중국으로 도라 갔소.

After you've seen to all the doors, put out the light. 문 다 슬퍼 본 후에 불을 끄오.

Four or five days after I came to Sëoul I was taken sick. 서울 올라 온 후 사흘에 병이 났소.

The road dried an hour
after the rain stopped.

Everything looks beautiful after the rain. 비 후에는 무엇이 더
다 못함.

I can not go after the last
of the month.

I will come after I have written the letter. 편지를 쓰고 오리이다.

I will come after dinner. 점심 먹고 가리이다.

2.

Afterwards we moved to Pyeng Yang. 후 에는 평양 으로 이소
향했소.

He was better for a while, but afterwards he became worse.

3.

It is already after twelve. 발석 십이 시가 지났소.

I can not go till after four. **스시 지나 기 전에는 못
가겠소.**

He started a little after 세 시 좀 지나서 썬났소.
three.

SEC. 27.—LONG TIME, LONG.

1. Long time, long,—오래, or a form of the verb
오라오 (to be long).

2. A long time before :—

(a.) A long time requisite, —오라지안코셔논 followed by the negative.

(b.) Where the idea of necessity is absent.—The clause qualified by *before*, is put negatively in the substantive form followed by the verb **오랏오** to be long. Sometimes the sentence is transposed and the equivalent of the English relative, *when*, used.

1.

The hot weather seems to last a long while this year.	금년에논 더위가 덕우 오란 모양이오.
I cannot wait long.	오래 못 기다 리겠소.
I will not wait long.	오래 아니 기다 리겠소.
I have'nt seen your father for a long time.	어루신씨 석 오래 뵈옵 지 못 하였소.
He has been sick for a long time.	오래 병이 드렸소.
I have been studying Korean for a long time.	조선 말 비혼 지가 오 랐소.
I didn't understand that for a long while.	그 거슬 모른 지가 오 랐소.

2. (a).

It will be a long time before you can talk like a Korean.	오랏 지 안코 셔논 조선 사름 처럼 말 못 하오 리이다.
It will be a long time before a railroad will be laid to Sēoul.	오랏 지 안코 셔논 셔물 석지 렬로가 알니 지 못 흘 듯하오.

We walked everywhere 소면 돈이 다가 나중에
and finally went to 종로에 갔소.

Chong No.

At last he got angry. 나중에 (양중에) 형이
났소.

§ III.—ADVERBS OF CAUSE, MANNER AND DEGREE.

Adverbs of manner derived from adjectives etc. are not treated of here.

SEC. 1.—WHY.

Why—왜, 엇지 하여 or by some circumlocution.

Why are the Japanese 왜 일본 사람이 서울을
leaving Sëoul? 떠나오.

Why does wood float and 왜 나무는 뜨고 쇠는
iron sink? 갈아 안소.

Then why do not you tell 그러 하면 왜 다시 하라고
him to do it again? 낼으지 안소.

Why did you pick those 엇지 하여 더 월계 꽃을
roses? 찔소.

Why do Korean women 엇지 하여서 조선 상녀편
when they go out cover 베 들이 출입 홀적에
their faces with the 장옷으로 얼굴을 가리
green coat? 우오.

Why do not you build your 무슨 석돌 으로 집을
house of wood? 나무로 짓지 아니 하오.

Why did he say he 무슨 석돌에 가지 안켓
would n't go? 다고 하옵더 니잇가.

SEC. 2.—ACCORDINGLY, CONSEQUENTLY, THEREFORE.

These are rendered by—그런고로, 그리하여서, 그사이에, 이러하기에, etc.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Accordingly I did so. | 그런 고로 그리 하였소. |
| Accordingly he went to the Kyeng Ou Kung. | 그리 하여서 경우궁 으로 갔소. |
| Consequently they changed the law. | 그 사이에 법을 고쳤소. |
| It rained for three days without stopping, and consequently all the bridges were swept away. | 삼흘을 비가 줄곧 오기에 다리가 다엎서 졌소. |
| Breakfast was fifteen minutes earlier than usual today, and consequently we could n't eat together. | 오늘 아침이 그 전 보다 일은 서른 으로 우리가 맞춰 참예 하지 못 하였소. |

SEC. 3.—How.

1. Interrogative,—엇더케 or some form of the verb 엇더하오.

2. The way in which,—participle with 것.

Note.—How, with verbs of *knowing*, etc., may often be rendered into Korean by the future participle with 클아오.

1 & 2.

How is the road from here to Eui Ju?	여기서 의쥬 가기 서지 길 이 엇덧소 읍 더 니 외가.
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------

- How do they make Kan-chang? 간장을 엇더케 만드오.
- Do you know how they print photographs? 사진을 엇더케 박는 줄 아오.
- Did you hear how your friend was killed? 내 친구가 엇더케 죽엇단 말 드렸소.
- Before he came to Sēoul he did not even know how to hold a pencil. 서울 오기 전에 붓 잡을 줄 도 몰랐소.
- Does that carpenter know how to make rocking chairs? 목수가 요덕요덕 흥는 교의 만들 줄 아오.
- He knows how to construct a sentence, but he does not know the pronunciation. 말 마티는 엇더케 만들 줄 알것 마는 음은 몰 나.
- It is very strange how a snake crawls. 비암이 기는 거시 뭐우 이샹 흥오.
- Please teach me how to hold my pen. 붓 잡는 거술 좀 7루쳐 주오.

SEC. 4.—So.

1 Manner :—

(a.) In this manner—이러 흥오.

(b.) In that manner—{ 그러 흥오.
더러 흥오.

2 Degree :—

(a.) In this degree—이러 게.

(b.) In that degree—{ 그러 게.
더러 게.

Note.—For the distinctive difference, between **더** and **그**, see Part I, ¶ 71 ff.

3 So that, so—as, —도록, and the forms of the verb
 ㅏㅓ with ㅓ.

1.

Be sure and not do it so, 부디 그러케 말고 이러케
 do it so. ㅎ오.

If that's your opinion, why 만일 생각이 그러 ㅎ면
 do not you say so? 왜 말 ㅎ지 안소.

That's so. 그러 ㅎ오.

I thought so. 그런 줄 알앗소.

2.

Tell that man not to make 그 사름 드려 학스를 그
 the shelves so high. 러케 좁히 몬돌지 말
 나고 ㅎ오.

It would have been well if 그렇게 성 급ㅎ게 아니
 you had not been quite ㅎ였 더면 토화지오.
 so hasty.

3.

It is so bright that it hurts 벋치 눈이 압ㅎ도록
 my eyes. ㅅ소.

It was so hot that the grass 물이 마르도록 더웠소.

He is so tall that he looks 보기 실도록 키 크오.

That is not as good as 그것 이것 과 ㅏ치 토지
 this. 아니 ㅎ오.

I don't go to Chemulpo as 전과 ㅏ치 자초 체물몬
 often as I used to. 아니 간다.

SEC. 5.—LIKE, AS.

1 Manner :—

(a.) In a similar way,—처럼 or 께치.

(b.) In the way,—대로.

(c.) To be like ; and like used as an adjective will be rendered by 께호오 in its various forms. 께호 prefixed to 처럼 has the force of *exactly*, and 똑 also has this effect.*Like this* is 이런, *like that* 그런 or 더런.

2 Degree—처럼 or 와께치.

1. (a).

If I could do as you do, 나 도 께 처럼 호엿 시면
I would be glad. 토켓소.I should hate to work like 일 께 처럼 일 호기 는
a coolie. 슬소.

He lives like a king. 남 께 처럼 사 읍 누이다.

He dresses like a China- 중국 사 께 처럼 옷을 께엿
man but he talks like a 것 만 는 일본 사 께 처럼
foreigner. 말 호오.

1. (b).

As I have already said. 내가 발서 브러 말 호 는
대로.Try and repeat the con- 드 른 대로 말 을 읍 겨
versation just as you 보오.
heard it.Why didn't you put out 왜 닐 은 대로 밤 에 불 을
your light last night as 쏘 지 아니 호엿 누야.
you were told ?

Make it round like this. 이 대로 동글게 문드오.
Just like this. 똑 이 대로.

1. (c).

Are the Japanese iron-clads exactly like the English? 일본 열갑선 도 영길러
것 과 똑 껏소.
Have you any silk like this? 이런 명쥬 의소.
Have you any silk exactly like this? 이 것 과 똑 껏흔 명쥬가
의소.
Pens like this are useless. 이 것과 껏흔 붓 쓸 티
업소.

2.

When one is thirsty there is nothing like water. 목 므를 썬에 물 처럼
껏치 토흔 것 업소.
Is Nam San as high as Sam Kak San. 남산이 삼각 산 과 껏치
좁소.
Go as quick as you can to the house and tell Sou Dongi to go for the doctor. 아 모 조 록 썰 니 집 에
가셔 슈동이 드려 의
원을 청하라고 빌너라.

SEC. 6.—VERY.

1 In affirmative sentences,—뉘우, 대단이, 과히, 금
찍이, 심히, etc.

2 In negative sentences except when interrogative,—그리.

1.

This pen is very bad.	이 붓시 매우 괴악 하오.
I will be very busy in the morning.	리일 아침에는 매우 바빠 겟소.
He was very sick but he is better now.	대단이 앓더니 지금은 좀 낫소.
It is very cold.	대단이 춥소.
It is very dear.	과히 비싸오.

2.

The sky is not very clear to-day.	오늘 하늘이 그리 청명치 못하오.
It is not very good.	그리 토치 안소.
They do not like each other very much.	그리 토흔 사이 아니오.
That fan was not very dear.	그 붓치가 그리 비싸지 아니 하옵더이다.
It is not very cold in Sēoul in winter.	서울이 겨울에 그리 춥지 안소.

SEC. 7.—ONLY.

1 Only—만, 뿐, 오직, 단, 다만.

2 Preceded by if,—만 with the conditional.

3 Not later than, yet,—아직; 아직 with negative.

4 Not until,—계유.

1.

- It's only a dog barking. 개가 지질 뿐일다.
- As I only came as company for you, why do you want to quarrel with me? 동행 으로 올 뿐 인터 웨 나 항고 싸 호라고 호오.
- I go to Chemulpo only once or twice a month. 혼 둘에 체물포 가기는 혼 두 번 뿐이오.
- He not only wears a sword but he knows how to use it. 다만 칼 만 찻실뿐 아 니타 쓸 줄 도 아오.
- How is it this jinriksha has only one wheel? 이 인력거가 웨 박후 혼나 뿐이오.
- Only half the number I ordered have come. 맞초인 수에 다만 반만 왔소.
- Mr. Kim has only one brother. 김석방 단 형제 뿐이오.
- I expected only twenty, but about forty came. 이십 명 만 을줄 알앗 더니 소십 명 왔소.

2.

- If we only had a good cat, we could catch these rats. 토흔 고양이 만 잇더면 이 쥐를 잡앗겟소.
- If you only use moderation, there will probably be no difficulty. 알맞게 만 혼면 어려울 것 업 솔듯 호오.

3.

To-day is only the fifth. 오늘 다섯째 날이 되
 었소.

Why it's only three o'clock. 무얼 아직 세 시요.

He's only a child. 아직 어린거 시오.

4.

Your letter reached me
only yesterday.

공의 편지가 어제씩 제유
왔소.

SEC. 8.—Too.

1 Too—너무, 과히, etc., with the adjective.

2 Too...to—너무 with the past verbal participle followed by the negative.

1.

This pencil is too soft. 이 연필 과히 (너무) 연
호오.

This bottle is too small. 이 병 과히 (너무) 적소.

Are not your ceilings a little too high? 천장이 과히 높지 안소.

This is a little too much. 이 거식 과히 (너무) 많소.

2.

These clothes are too dirty to wear. 이 옷이 너무 더러워서 입을 수 없소.

Pine is too brittle to make a cane. 소나무는 너무 연약해서
집합이 할 수 업소.

His talk is too low to hear. 말 소리가 너무 2느려서
드를 수 업소.

SEC. 9.—EVEN.

1 Even—도, or more strongly 이라도 affixed to its word.

2 Signifying, *even including*,—까지.

1.

Even a child can do that. 어린 순희라도 그 거슨
할오.

Even Soun Yongi can read Chinese pretty well. 순용이라도 체법 진서를
볼 줄아오.

Even to-morrow will do. 리일 이라도 할것소.

He hasn't even eaten rice to-day. 오늘 밥도 아니 먹으읍
더이다.

Soun Yongi did n't even sweep the room this morning. 오늘 식전 에는 순용이가
방을 쓸지 도 아니 할
것소.

If I walk even one ri I get very tired. 일 리라도 가려면
대단히 곤할오.

2.

They killed even the children. 어린 순희까지도 죽
이엇소.

SEC. 10.—ALMOST.

1 Nearly--거위.

2 Nearly all, the most of—거위 다, 대개, 대개다.

1.

It's almost twelve o'clock. 거위 십이 시오.

It's almost a year since I went to Pyeng Yang. 평양 갔다 온지가 거위
일년 이오.

My horse stumbled, and I almost fell off. 말이 압 도리를 들어서
거위 쉰러졌소.

2.

The rain water is almost gone. 비 물이 거위 다 업서
졌소.

Almost every one in the house has a cold. 집 안 사람 거위 다
감기 드렸소.

Almost all the apples were rotten. 사과가 거위 다 썩었소.

Nearly all our sugar was stolen. 우리 사당 거위 다 도둑
마갔소.

I am home almost every afternoon. 오후 흥면 거위 흥상 집
애 왔소.

SEC. 11.—ABOUT.

Approximately—**경** preceding the quantity or number, or **즈음** sometimes contracted into **쯤**, following it. At times both these may be used, the one preceding and the other following the quantity referred to.

About how much will it cost? 얼마 즈음 될 듯 하오.

You had better put in about ten pounds and boil it about half an hour. 혼 열근너코 반시 간 즈음 쏘리논 거시 토켓다.

I waited about half an hour, and then called a chair and went home. 혼 반시 간 기다려 다가 교군을 불너 등고 집으로 갔소.

He is about five feet high and weighs about a hundred pounds. 그가 키는 혼 오 척되고 무게는 백근 즈음 되오.

It's about twice as large as ours. 우리 것 보다 혼 곱절 되엿소.

CHAPTER VIII.

NUMERALS.

With reference to numerals little need here be said. In treating of them from the Korean, they have virtually at the same time, been considered from the foreign standpoint. We then saw that Korean numerals might be either adjectives or substantives. When used substantively they stand in apposition to the noun they limit, and consequently hold a position much more emphatic, than when used adjectively. Hence, if, when using English numerals, the *number* is the special thing to which attention is to be called, it must be rendered into Korean by the use of the substantive form. If on the other hand, the number is simply secondary, and only mentioned incidentally, and its noun is the principal thought, the adjective form will be used, and it will precede its noun.

In rendering English into Korean, we should also remember, their constant use of "Specific Classifiers." Many of these cannot be rendered into English and consequently when we render English into Korean, if we would speak idiomatic Korean, the proper classifier must be introduced.

A careful study of these classifiers must then be made. It has been noticed, that there are two classes of numerals, pure Korean, and Sinicc-Korean, and while they may be used interchangeably, it must not be forgotten, that where a Sinico-Korean numeral is used, a corresponding Sinico-Korean noun must also accompany it. While the importance of this rule may not at first sight appear to the student, its neglect is altogether wrong, grates upon Korean ears, and will cause the offender to be regarded as ignorant of one of the fundamental rules of Korean etymology. With reference to ordinals and fractions, enough has already been said in Part I.

Right in this place, we should speak of the method of addressing a letter. In this matter, the Korean is more logical than the foreigner ; his plan is the reverse of ours, for instance, he would begin with the country then the province, city, ward, street, and end with the name of the party addressed.

As sentences illustrating the use of the numerals, occur everywhere throughout the book, none need be given here.

CHAPTER IX.

THE PREPOSITION.

The English prepositions may be rendered into Korean generally by Korean postpositions, simple or composite; verbal participles; phrases; or, where the sense is clear without, they need not be rendered. From this it will be seen that the Korean equivalent of an English preposition, will always follow the word it governs.

SEC. 1.—At.

1 Signifying place:—

(a.) With a verb of situation—에.

(b.) With a verb of action—에 석 or simply 석.

2 Referring to time—에.

1. (a).

There used to be temples 석울에 근본 절이 있섯소.
in Sëoul.

Are there no tombs of the 왕 치 때 릉 이 송 도에
Whang dynasty at Song 업소.
Do?

I wish there were no mos- 북한에 모기가 업섯 더면
quitoes at Pouk Han. 토켓소.

1. (b).

We buy our vegetables at 더 전 에셔 최호논 사오.
that shop.

We stopped at Pyeng Yang 평양셔 사흘 류 흥였소.
three days.

We rested at Oricole. 올이골셔 쉬였소.

2.

I got up at half past four 오늘 식전 에논 사시
this morning. 반에 니러 낫소.

Wake me at sunrise to- 리일 히 뜻기 에 세워라.
morrow.

SEC. 2.—IN.

1 With verbs of situation,—에 which is often used
with 드오.

2 With verbs of action,—에셔 which may contract
into 셔 or 예.

3 Inside of, within, during,—속예, 안희, 예 or 동안.

1.

Is there a good hotel in Sëoul? 서울에 토흔 주막이 잇소.

There are two or three fine water-falls in Korea. 조선에 토흔 폭포가 두
서너 곳 잇소.

Is there anything in the house? 집 안에 무엇 잇소.

Don't sit in a draught. 마 바람 치는 티 안지
마라.

What is in that box? 그 궤에 무엇 드려놔.

Is there a hole in this tea-pot? 이 차관에 구멍 잇소.

2.

He probably died at Tokio. 동경서 죽은 듯 호오.

I must have dropped it at Chong No. 덩녕 종로 예서 썩러
트린 듯 호오.

How much wine do you suppose is drunk in Sëoul in a year? 일년에 서울서 술이 얼
마나 먹을 듯 호오.

You can't get good chairs in the country. 석골 석논 토흔 교군을
엇을수 가업소.

Which is the longest street in Sëoul? 서울 석논 어느 길이 그
중 기오.

Which is the largest island in the world? 현하 에엇던 섬이 그 중
크오.

It's in the leather trunk, 가죽 상자 속에 도끼로
wrapped in paper. 싸 너헛소.

I saw a fox in the woods. 수를 안희 여호를 보앗소.

You can go to Chong No 이십 분 동안 에 종로에
in twenty minutes. 가오.

You probably put it in 주머니에 너헛 실 듯
your pocket. 하오.

SEC. 3.—ON.

1 On—에.

2 On the top of, on the surface of,—우희.

Please write “ Mr. Kim ” 이 피봉에 김석방 이라고
on this envelope. 써주오.

There's a stain on my 내 슈전에 어름이 젖소.
handkerchief.

There's a fly on the ceiling. 천장에 파리가 있소.

You went home on the 초 항로에 집에 갔소.
first.

2.

Is that a dog sleeping on 더 마루 우희 자는 거시
the floor? 개가 아니오.

My hat is on the table. 배 갓 상 우희 있소.

I dropped a stone on my 발 우희 돌을 쉼러 르
foot. 렸소.

SEC. 4.—TO.

1 With animate objects—의게, 안테, or 씨, which last is honorific.

2 With inanimate objects—에 or 로; oftentimes also the simple accusative postposition 을 will be used.

3 As far as—까지.

Note.—With the indirect object, the postposition is frequently omitted.

1.

Give something to the dog. 개 무엇 좀 주오.

Don't lend it to anyone. 그거술 뉘게 던지 빌너지
마오.

What did you say to Mr. Song? 송석방씨 무슨 말 하였소.

Give a thousand cash to Mr. Pak. 열량 박석방 안테 주오.

2.

He has gone to Song Do. 송도 로갔소.

In order to see the sights, 리일 정처를 보려고 비
we are going by boats to 뚝고 강화를 가오.
Kang Wha to-morrow.

Would you like to take a walk to Nam San? 남산에 향기 하느 거시
엇더겠소.

3.

How much is it to An Dong and back? 안동 까지 안 밋기 얼
마냐.

I went to Pak. Dong but 박동 까지 갔시나 밋나지
I didn't meet him. 못 하였소.

SEC. 5.—FROM, OUT OF, OFF.

1 Preceding a noun,—브러, 에서.

2 Preceding a verbal noun,—the negative with future verbal participle and 향오.

3 With verbs of receiving accepting, etc., equivalent to *at the hand of*—의게 or 한테 will be used.

4 Off, in the sense of *detached from*, is generally expressed by some form of the verb.

5 Off shore—압희 or 압희석 dependent upon whether the accompanying verb is one of situation or action.

1.

How far is it from here to that tree? 석기석 더 나모 석지 얼마 나 되오.

Hang it from the fourth nail on the right. 을흔 편 넷재 못식석 거오.

I rode steadily from six in the morning, till six in the evening. 아츰 륝시 브러 저녁 륝시 석지 몰을늘 토소.

Can you borrow one from next door? 나웃 집에서 빌수 외소.

Take a pound of sugar out of that box. 더 궤에석 사당 혼근 배석타.

Empty it out of this bottle and pour it into that. 이 병에석 쓰리석 더 병에 부어타.

Take the books off this table. 책을 이 상에석 갖다 노하타.

I fell off my horse and sprained my foot. 개 물 에서 노려 저서
발을 썩었소.

2.

Is there any way of keeping things from moulding? 곰팡 아니 나게 할 수가
잇소.

Be careful and keep the children from taking cold. 으히 감기 들 잔게 호오.

3.

I received fifteen dollars from Mr. Pak. 박씨 방 안테 은전 열
다섯 개 받았소.

I got a passport from the minister. 공소 의게 빙푼 었엇소.

I obtained permission to go to the eastern palace from the president of the foreign office. 동관 대궐 드려 갈 허락을
독관 안테 었엇소.

4.

The leg is off the table. 더 상 다리 가 썩엇소.

The tiles are off the roof. 더 집웅에 기와 가 버섯
엇소.

He took off his clothes. 옷을 버섯소.

5.

Two large whales were killed off Fusan. 부산 압히서 큰 고래 둘
잡앗소.

Two Chinese men-of-war 체물포 압회 중국 병선
have been off Chemulpo 둘이 혼 돌 넘 도록
for over a month. 외소.

SEC. 6.—BY, THROUGH.

1 Of the agent—의게, 안테, 예. (see Part I. ¶ 101 ff.)

2 Of the instrument, by means of—로 or 으로; or 석
문에 which, if the English preposition it represents
governs a verbal noun, is preceded by the participle,
or verbal noun in 기 of the appropriate verb.

3 Beside—옆히.

4 Of time—에, or more exactly 넘지 안코.

5 From end to end of—스무쳐.

1.

I had it made by a black- 내가 대장 안테 문 등
smith. 렸소.

This book was written by 이 책 조선 사람 안테
a Korean. 썼소.

I was struck by a stone. 내가 돌 안테 마쳤소.

I was cut by a knife. 내가 칼로 베히엿소.

2.

He went to Tokio by rail. 열로로 동경 갔소.

Let me know by telegraph 댐신 으로 곧 바게 알게
immediately. 하여 주오.

Were you not awakened 어제 밤에 디동 으로
by the earthquake last 아니 석엿소.
night?

- I could'nt sleep all night through his crying. 우는 석문에 밤식 도록 못 잤소.
- I lost fifty dollars through Mr. Kim. 김석방 석문에 오십원 잃혔소.
- He lost his whole fortune through the burning of his house. 집 등는 석문에 잃는 지 물다 일허 버렸소.

3.

- Did you ever stand by a water-fall? 록문슈 옆히 섰스옵더니 잇가.
- Let's see, you live in the house by the bridge? 로형이 다리 옆히 집 에셔 살지오 그랴.
- This brook runs by our house. 이 내 우리 집 옆히 흐려 가오.

4.

- It will be ready by noon. 열 두시 에 다 되겟소.
- It may possibly stop raining by evening. 후 저녁 때에 비가 그칠 듯 호오.
- The chair must be here by four o'clock. 네시 넘지 안코 보고 여긔 잇셔야 쓰겟소.
- I must start for home by the last of the month. 금음 넘지 안코 집에 가기로 석나야 쓰겟소.

5.

- I ran through the house. 내가 집을 스뭇쳐 다라 왔소.
- I rode through a crowd in a jinriksha. 인력거를 등고 사름 모힌 티로 스뭇쳐 지나 갔소.

SEC. 7.—WITH.

1 Of the instrument,—로 or 으로.

2 Together with, in company with,—하고 ; 함께 ;
 지로 ; 께치 ; 함께.

3 Belonging to, connected with,—에 or often not rendered.

1.

You'd better tie that parcel with a string. 더 짐을 노끈 으로 묶면
 토치오.

Wipe it with a cloth. 휴건 으로 씻셔라.

That man writes with his left hand. 그 사 례 왼손 으로 쓰오.

2.

I argued with that man for about an hour. 그 사 례 하고 혼 시 나
 힐난 하였소.

Send the pears along, with the grapes. 포도를 비 하고 보내오.

I put it in the corner with the umbrella. 구 석 에 우산 하고 두
 었소.

Then I'll go with you. 그리 하면 주 님 하고
 가겠넌.

3.

Is there no key with this watch ? 이 시계 열쇠가 업소.

Is there not is a wick with 이 새등 심지가 업소.
this new lamp?

Was there not a letter 이 궤에 편지 업섯소.
with this box?

SEC. 8.—WITHOUT.

1 Preceding a noun :—

(a.) Not having—업시 affixed to the noun.

(b.) Unless one has—업수면.

2 Preceding a verbal noun.—the verbal stem preceded by a negative, connected with the accompanying verb by 고; or, the negative base with 안크, and the accompanying verb.

1. (a).

This letter came without 이 편지가 인지 업시
a stamp. 왔소.

Why did you make it with- 왜 손잡이 업시 못
out handles? 렸소.

These matches burn with- 이 석류황이 내암새 업시
out any smell. 든오.

Don't go without permiss- 허락 업시 가지 마라.
ion.

1. (b).

You can't open it without 열쇠 업수면 열수 업소.
a key.

Mr. Kim can't read any- 안경 업수면 김석방이
thing without glasses. 아 모 글즈 도 못
보겠소.

2.

I suppose it would n't do for us to go in without taking off our shoes. 아마 신 아니 벗고 집에 드려 가면 토치 안치오.

You must not go without letting me know. 나를 알게 하지 아니 하고는 가지 마라.

Don't buy sugar without weighing it. 근수를 달지 안코는 사당을 사지 마라.

He went without (*taking*) an umbrella. 우산 아니 가지고 갔소.

Bring me the lamp without (*putting on*) the chimney. 류리 덩지 말고 등을 가져 오오.

I'll go without (*eating*) supper. 저녁 아니 먹고 가겠소.

Will you go without (*taking*) a guide? 인도 하는 사람 아니 드리고 가겠소.

SEC. 9.—OF.

1 Possession,—의 if expressed, but more generally not expressed.

2 Apposition,—not rendered.

3 Partitive :—

(a.) Some of a group as contrasted with the remainder, or emphasized, (hence frequently accompanied by a pronominal adjective)—그중 에, 예.

(b.) When no contrast or special emphasis is expressed the *of*, is not rendered.

4 Made of, —로.

1.

The nails were rotten and 못시 다 삭아서 궤 밋차
the bottom of the box 뻐졌소.
fell out.

Don't you like the smell 토흔 만 담비 배암새 도
of a good cigar? 토화 아니 향오.

Don't handle the property 남의 지물 문지 지 마라.
of others.

2.

In the capital of Chyella 전라 감영에 토흔 집
there are some fine 외소.
houses.

In the city of Song Do 송도 성 안희 인삼 만히
they raise a great deal 기르오.
of Ginseng.

3. (a).

Some of us would like to 우리 중에 었던 사롬이
study history. 소귀를 비호고 시배
 향오.

Many of the Japanese 일본 사롬 중에 석양
dress in foreign clothes. 복식을 쓰논 이가 만소.

Many of them don't know how to read or write. 그 중에 글 씌지 못하고 글 시 쓸 줄 모르는 이가 만소.

Many of the Japanese speak English. 일본 사람 중에 영국 말 하는 이가 만소.

Few of the chair bearers live to be fifty. 고 군 군 예 오십 세 지 사는 이가 만치 아니 호요.

3. (b).

Please hand me one of those pens. 그분 하나 주오.

One of Mr. Kim's daughters was married yesterday. 김석방 딸이 어저석 하나 식집 갓소.

4.

Make it of pine. 소나무 로 만드려라.

It's made of flour, eggs, and sugar. 밀 가로와 사당과 알로 만드렷소.

Do you intend to build the house of brick? 집 벽돌 노 지랴고 호옵 누니잇가.

SEC. 10.—FOR.

1 For the sake of,—위 호야.

2 Instead of,—터신.

3 To serve as, to be used for,—로 or 으로.

4 Considering that,—로논, 으로논.

5 To be delivered to,—의게 with a participle of some such verb as 전함오 or 줌오.

6 To be used *with, on, by*—에 쓸.

7 Addressed to,—의게 or 씌.

8 To fetch, to get,—가질너, 차지러.

9 To call,—부르러.

10 Price,—으러.

11 Courtesy, usually of a favor for a third party,—the verbal participle with 줌오.

1.

He died for his country.	나라 위함야 상사 나섰소.
The doctor recommended	오늘 의원이 날 회춘
me to go to the country	함기 위함야 식골노
for my health.	가라고 권함엿소.

2.

Do not use scissors for a	칼 티신 으로 가위를
knife.	쓰지 마오.

3.

What are those boards	더 널판지 무어 소로
for?	쓰겟소.

That wont do for a pillow.	더 거시 목침 으로 못
	쓰겟소.

He will do well for a	선생 으로 잘 될듯 함오.
teacher.	

I bought it for a thing to put pens in. 북 오칠 거스로 샀소.

4.

He speaks very well for a foreigner. 외국 사람 으로 는 말 잘
 함오.

He runs very well for a child. 오히려 그는 잘 달리고요.

It was very badly done for him. 그 사 례 으로는 잘 못
했소.

Is n't this hot weather for Sēoul? 지금 일기가 서울 노는
덥지 안소.

5.

Mr. Kim has a letter for you. 김석방이 로형씨 전하라
 편지 외소.

Yesterday I gave him a letter for Mr. Song. 어제씨 송석방 의게 편지 주었소.

6.

I want a key for this box. 이 궤에 쓸 열쇠 하나
 엿으라고 그리 호오.

Have you a cork for this bottle? 이 병에 쓸 막이 있소.

Get another chimney for this lamp. 이 등에 쓸 류리 흥나 사 오너라.

I don't think you can buy one for ten yen.	내 생각에 열원 으로 못 팔듯 하오.
I bought it for five dollars and sold it for six.	오원 으로 사서 육원 으로 팔았소.
He sold it for five thou- sand dollars and got the money.	은전 오천 개로 팔고 돈다 받았소.
I'll go for two nyang.	두냥 으로 가겠소.

11.

Please sharpen both ends of this pencil for me. 이 연필 량 쪽 삭가 주시오.

Buy some toys for the children. 흔히 작란 거음 사주시오.

Wont you buy a horse for me? 나를 몰 안 사 주겟소.

I want you to write two letters for me. 공이 나를 편지 둘 써 주면 토 겠소.

SEC. 11.—ACROSS, OVER, BEYOND.

1 On the other side—건너 or 넘어. When it is simply *across*, it is 건너; when it has gone *over*, it is 넘어.

2 Further on than :—지나.

1.

Who is that over there? 더 건너 외논 이가 누구요.

What's that house across the canal? 기천 건너 더 집이 무슴 집이오.

The kite went over the house. 연이 집 넘어로 넘어 갔소.

There is another temple beyond Sam Kak San. 삼각산 넘어 가셔 또 절 흥나 외소.

2.

It's a little beyond the Kwang Chung bridge. 광충 다리 조금 지나 외소.

He lives just beyond the 미국 공사관 좁 지나
American legation. 산다.

SEC. 12.—AMONG.

Among—중 에.

I think you'll find it among 연장 중에 찾을 듯하오.
the tools.

Who among us will obtain 우리 중에 누가 먼저
office first? 벼슬 하겠소.

Is there an Ok Pyen among 그 중에 옥편 있소.
them?

SEC. 13.—AROUND.

1 On all sides 에워.

2 About and round 도로.

1 and 2.

There was a crowd of po- 혼 무리 순타가 집을
licemen standing around 에워 싸고 섰소.
the house.

Let's put some flowers 실과를 꽃창로 에워 끼
around the fruit. 읊시다.

He walked three times 성을 세번 에워 돈넜소.
around the city.

The rats ran all round the 밥 마다 쥐들이 쥬방으로
kitchen every night. 도로 돈니오.

SEC. 15.—BEFORE.

In front of—앞히, 압히셔.

He stood before the king. 대군주 압히 섰소.

He planted a tree before the house. 집 압히 나무를 심엇소.

SEC. 15.—BEHIND.

Behind—뒤히.

There's a well behind the house. 집 뒤히 우물이 잇소.

The key has fallen down behind the clock. 즈명종 뒤히 열쇠를 썩러 졌소.

Please hand me that book behind you. 뒤히 책 좀 집어 주오.

The troops marched behind the king. 대군주 뒤히 병덕가 섰라가 읍덕이다.

You go first and I'll come after. 형은 먼저 가고 나 는 뒤히 가겟소.

SEC. 16.—BETWEEN.

Between—사이에.

There's a well between the doctor's house and mine. 의원의 집과 우리 집 사이에 우물이 잇소.

It has fallen down between the bookcase and the wall. 벽고 책장 사이에 썩러 졌소.

SEC. 17.—DURING.

During **사이, 동안** with or without the postposition **에**.

He died during the night. **밤 사이에 죽었소.**

How were you during the night? **밤 사이 었더 호시오.**

He worked very hard during the whole year. **일년 사이에 매우 힘썼소.**

The children played during the teacher's absence. **선생 업슬 동안에 유희들 작란호 었소.**

If any one should come during dinner tell him I can't see him. **덤심 먹을 사이에 누가 오면 못본다고 호여라.**

SEC. 18.—EXCEPT, BESIDES, BUT.

1 Excepting, besides—**밖 기**.

2 Only—**만, 뿐**, etc., or **밖 기** with the negative.

1.

I have nothing except a foreign dollar. **양은전 밖 기 업소.**

Didn't you go anywhere but to the house? **집 밖 기 다른 터 아니 갔더냐.**

Everything except this is perfectly plain. **이 말 밖 기는 다 뵙소.**

Haven't you any pens besides this? **이 북 밖 기 업소.**

2.

He has taken two himself, 더는 둘 가지고 나눈
and has n't given me but 하나 만 주었소.
one.

He did n't send but half a { 한 반 근만 보내 었소.
pound. { 반근 ^{or} 밧긔 아니 보내었소.

I wont give but a little 조금 만더 주겠소.
more.

He did n't wait but a little 조금 밧긔 아니 기다렸소.
while.

SEC. 19.—INSTEAD OF.

1 Before a noun,—**티신**.

2 Before a verbal noun,—the verbal stem with **안코**
or the verbal stem preceded by a negative with **고**.

1.

Did n't you put in salt in- 사당 티신 소금 안 너헛
stead of sugar? 뇨냐.

They arrested the father 아 들 티신 아 비 가 잡
instead of the son. 헛소.

Bring Korean money in- 양 은 전 도 신 에 조 천
stead of dollars. 돈 가져 오너타.

If you go instead of him it 그 사 례 티신 가면 도
will be well. 겠소.

2.

Instead of going to Chemulpo he went to Fusan. 체물포 안 가고 부산
으로 갔소.

He sleeps all day instead of doing his work. 일 하지 안코 종일 자오.

I think I'll build instead of buying. 집 사지 안코 질듯 함오.

SEC. 20.—OVER, ABOVE.

Over, above—우희, 우호로.

There's a sign over that door. 더 문 우희 현관 잇소.

It's hanging over the shelf. 탁스 우희 걸엇소.

There are a lot of buzzards flying about over that mountain. 더 산 우호로 소리개
여러히 날나 가오.

SEC. 21.—UNDER, BELOW.

Under, below—밋희.

The books are under the shelf. 탁스 밋희 책 이 잇소.

Go and put it under the table. 상 밋희 갖다 두어라.

There is a dog under the verandah gnawing a bone. 더 마루 밋희 뼈를 씹무는
개 잇소.

SEC. 22.—ACCORDING TO, IN ACCORDANCE WITH.

- 1 Dependent on, regulated by—대로.
- 2 Of opinions, teachings, etc.—으로는 the same.
- 3 Of statements etc.,—말대로, 말노 or 대로.
- 4 In harmony with,—와 합호오.

1.

The rate differs according to the number of characters. 글자수 대로 잡시 다름오.

The postage differs according to the weight of the letter. 편지 무게 대로 삭이 다름오.

I change my clothes according to the weather. 일기가 되는 대로 옷을 벗고아 입소.

They're arranged according to color. 빛 대로 버려 노함소.

I may go or not according to circumstances. 갈년지 안 갈년지 일 되는 대로 되겟소.

2.

According to the opinion of some, this is a mistake. 엇던 사람의 생각 으로는 이거시 그름오.

According to my opinion this book is not worth much. 내 생각 으로는 이책 쓸티 별노 업소.

3.

According to the doctor, 의원 말노는 역질 이오.
he has the small-pox.

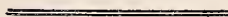
According to the doctor's 의원 할라논 대로 병인을
orders the patient was 식골노 드려 갓소.
taken to the country.

4.

Is that in accordance with 그 것 일본 풍속 과 합
Japanese custom? 호오.

Your view is not in accord- 공 의 생각 이 약도 외
ance with the treaty. 합지 안소.

That's not in accordance 이 거 시 로형 의 상약
with your agreement. 과 합지 안소.



CHAPTER X.

THE CONJUNCTION.

English conjunctions are variously rendered into the Korean by particles, nouns, verbal moods, and the participial forms of adjectives and verbs.

Sec. 1.—AND.

1 Connecting nouns—by *고* (repeated after the last noun), or *와* becoming *와* after a vowel.

2 Connecting verbs and adjectives. When the sentences and clauses connected are :—

(a.) Co-ordinate—by the verbal root with *고* the final verb only being inflected.

(b.) Subordinate—by the participial form of the verb of the subordinate clause.

3 Equivalent to, “*but*” “*yet*” “*because*” “*when*” “*if*” *etc.*—it is translated accordingly.

4 “*And-so-forth*” is translated by—*와...와...다*.

1.

- Please buy some pens, 펜 히를 붓 히고 토 히
 paper and books for the 히고 칩 히고 줌 사
 children. 주오.
- For breakfast we will 조 반 에 는 밥 과 차 와
 have rice, tea, and bread. 먹 을 먹 겠 소.

2. (a).

- The chairmen put down 교 군 군 들 이 보 고 를 노 러
 the chair and went into 노 코 술 먹 으 로 드 러
 the saloon. 갔 소.
- I dreamed the house was 꿈 에 집 불 이 난 거 술
 on fire and woke up with 보 고 놀 나 씨 었 소.
 a start.
- I met Mr. Kim before 식 전 에 김 석 방 을 보 고
 breakfast and proposed 쫓 치 공 부 히 자 고 히
 that we study together. 었 소.

2. (b).

- I intended to cross the 강 을 건 너 가 셔 류 막 에
 river and go to a hotel. 들 나 고 히 었 소.
- The ball went over the 공 이 담 을 넘 어 가 셔 차 질
 fence and we cannot 수 가 업 소.
 find it.
- It rained and we could not 비 가 와 셔 씨 나 지 못
 start. 히 었 소.

3.

- I told Mr. Yi what you 일 전 에 히 시 던 말 을 리
 told me some time ago, 석 방 씨 히 었 더 니 그
 and he said it was not so. 러 치 안 다 고 히 었 소.

This roof was newly thatched barely a month ago, and it has begun to leak again. 이 집붕은 겨우 한 달 전에 새로 너어도 또 새기 시작함요.

Sou Dongi did not put on much coal and the fire went out. 슈 동이가 석탄을 만히 넣치 아니함즉 불이 소졌소.

Put them in the sun and they will dry directly. 볏히 내여 노면 곳 마를것소.

Everybody else gets them, and why can not you. 다른 사롬은 다 엇어 가지논디 왜 공은 못 함요.

4.

He has pens, paper, ink, etc. 붓과 도끼 와 먹 과 다 잇소.

SEC. 2.—BOTH ... AND.

1 Usually the verb is repeated with 도 ... 도.

2 With adjectives, simple 고 following the root of the first adjective is often used.

1.

There seem to be plenty of both roses and camellias in your garden. 공의 화원 에는 월계 꽃 도 만코 동백꽃 도 만흔 모양이요.

It both rained and snowed to-day. 오늘은 눈 도 오고 비 도 왔소.

2.

There are many things 곱고 긴흔 물건 만소.
that are both useful and
ornamental.

SEC. 3.—TOO, ALSO.

Too, also—도.

Bring a spoon too. 숟가락 도 가져오너타.
They have a custom like 조선 도 그런 풍속이잇소.
that in Korea, too.
Does your right eye pain 올흔 편 눈 도 압흐오.
you also?
Did you forget to speak 그 말 도 너져브렸소.
about that too?

SEC. 4.—BUT.

1 A disjunctive is much less frequently used by Koreans than by English, the former preferring a transposition, and the use of the concessive.

2 It may however be rendered by its Korean equivalent 마는, which may be joined directly to any one of the indicative tenses without the elision of its termination ; or connected by 겠 to any indicative form, when 겠 replaces its termination ; or to any participle, and then the participle qualifies 겠.

1.

It is good enough but the 도흐나 갑시 만소.
price is high.

The screen is old, but it is well painted.	이 병풍이 늙기는 늙었 시되 그림은 잘 그렸소.
That ring is good but it is a little small.	그가락지가 톡기는 톡 되 좀 적소.

2.

It will probably rain but I must go.	비 올 듯 할것 마는 갈수 밧기 업소.
If you want to go, go, but come back early.	가랴면 가거랴 마는 일즉 도라 오너랴.
I tried to get him to write for me but he would n't.	편지 썩 줄 막음 나기를 시험 할것 마는 아니 썼소.
I tried to sleep, but it thundered so I could n't.	먹우 자랴고 이썩것 마는 런 동 이 대단할야 못 찾소.
My brother likes Korean food, but I cannot eat it.	형님은 조선 음식을 토화 할것 마는 나는 못 먹겟소.
He said Koreans were cowards, but he did n't know what he was talking about.	조선 사름 걱정이 만라고 할것 마는 모르는 말 이오.

SEC. 5.—THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, STILL.

1 Although may be rendered into Korean by any one of the concessive conjunctions,—나, 도, 거니와, etc., and a stronger, form (*even though*) may be rendered by **지라도** with a relative participle.

2 Even so, and yet,—그러겠 막논, 그러하셔도, etc., may be used.

1.

Although he is still very sick he will probably get well. 아직 도 몹우 편치 못하
나 나홀 듯 호요.

I suppose we'll have to take it, although it does n't suit. 막읍에 아니 드려도 엇지
홀수 업소.

Though he's a rich man he will not give a cent. 부자 되셔도 혼돈 도
안 주겟소.

He wont give up smoking, though it's injuring him. 담비가 몸에 화롭 거니와
긋 치지아니 호읍더이다.

He's getting pretty old, but he is strong yet. 줍 늙어젧 거니와 아직
도 건장 호요.

2.

Still, you had better apologize. 그러겠 막논 샤죄 호논
거시 낫겟소.

Still, it will cost a thousand nyang. 그러 하셔 도 천량은
드려야 호겟소.

Still, it would be better not to stop. 그러 하셔 도 쉬지 말고
호논 거시 도겟소.

Still, he can't possibly be here for some time yet. 그러 하셔 도 오래면 아직
도 멀엇소.

1. (c).

- I don't know whether that is silk or cotton. 그 거시 명쥬 인지 무명 인지 모르겠소.
- Please ask whether the bath is ready. 목욕 물이 다 되었나 무려 보아 주시오.
- I don't know whether it will rain or not. 비가 올는지 아니 올는지 알수 업소.
- Do you know whether the steamer goes to-day or to-morrow? 화륜선 오늘 떠나는지 리일 떠나는지 알으시오.

2.

- Will you take a chair or walk? 교운을 등던지 것던지 하오.
- Tell him to come either to-day or to-morrow. 리일 오던지 모레 오던지 하라고 하오.
- I told the carpenter he might make it round or square. 목쥬 드려 그 거술 둥글게 하던지 모지게 하던지 하라고 하였소.
- I don't care whether it rains or not. 비가 오던지 아니 오던지 관계치 안소.
- It is no matter to me whether he studies or not. 류학 던지 아니 하던지 상관 업소.
- It does n't make any difference whether it's bamboo or not. 대나무 던지 아니 던지 관계치 안소.

3.

That wont do either.	그 것도 못 쓰겠소.
There now, see that ! You can't do it either.	자 그것 보오 공도 하지 못하 러이다.
You must n't leave your light burning at night either.	즈니 도 밤에 불혀 두지 말게.
You can't go either.	공 도 가지 못하오.
He did n't say a word about that either.	그 것도 아모 말도 아니 하옵더 이다.
They don't say that either.	그러라고 도 아니 하옵 더이다.

SEC. 7 NEITHER-NOR.

Neither...nor—도...도 with the negative.

It is neither a flea nor a mosquito.	벼룩 도 아니오 모기 도 아니오.
It is neither a table nor a chair.	교 위 도 업고 상 도 업소 읍더 이다.
It neither rained nor snow- ed for a month.	한 달 동안은 비 도 아니 오고 눈 도 아니 오 오.
Hereafter I will neither borrow nor lend.	이 후 브려논 빌지 도 안코 빌너지 도 안켓소.
He can neither read nor write.	읽 보 지 도 못 하고 글쓰 쓰지도 못 하오.

SEC. 8.—IF, UNLESS.

1 If—면.

(a.) In simple supposition—면 with one or other of the simple tenses.

(b.) Supposition contrary to fact—면 with one or other of the compound tenses.

2 When “if” introduces a future effect or consequence (sometimes expressed in English by ‘and’) it is frequently rendered by the verbal stem and 고는.

3 Mere supposition, equivalent to “in case,” “supposing that” “if that was the case,” etc., it may be rendered by 거든.

4 Even if.—relative participle with 지라도 or verbal participle with 도.

Unless, is rendered the same as, *if not*.

1. (a).

If it is on the main road we can find it directly. 큰 길에 잇스면 곧 찾을 수 잇소.

Do not go out if it is raining. 비가 오면 나가지 마오.

He will probably go if he is not otherwise engaged. 다른 일이 업스면 갈 듯 하오.

Unless he is in a hurry he will probably stop at Oricole. 바쁘지 아니 하면 오리골 석 지체할 듯 하오.

If it does n't suit you, you need n't pay for it. 마음에 맞지 아니 하면 잡손 그만 두오.

You'd better not buy them unless they are cheap and good. 싸고 또 치 아니 하면 사지 아니하는 거시 또겠소.

You must keep quiet if you come in here. 여기 드려 오면 조용히 해야 할것소.

If you will lend me your penknife I will make you a kite. 주머니 칼을 빌리면 연 만들어 주리이다.

If he has n't got up yet shall I call him? 아직 일어나지 아니 하였시면 불러 리릿가.

If you have n't put it in the room, where have you put it? 방에 두지 아니 하였시면 어디 두었소.

If the bridges have n't been carried away they probably got along without difficulty. 다리가 다러나지 아니 하였시면 걱정 업시 지났실 듯 하오.

If he is out what shall I do? 출입 하였시면 엇더케 할리릿가.

If it is past twelve, we must start immediately. 십이시 지났시면 곧 떠나야 할것소.

What shall I do if the passport has not come? 빙글가 아니왔시면 엇더케 하오.

1. (b).

What should we have done if the bridges had all been carried away? 다리가 썩 나갔더면 엇더케 지나갔 실고.

- If I had not had a horse, how could I have come? 물이 업섯 더먼 엇더케 왔겟소.
- How could I have studied unless I had a teacher? 선생이 업섯 더먼 엇더케 글을 배웠실고.
- If I had studied at once, it would have been well. 공부를 진즉 흥엿 더먼 토왔겟소.
- If he had come yesterday I would have seen him. 어저씨 왔더먼 보았지오.
- If I had gone yesterday I would have come back. 어저씨 갔더먼 도라왔겟소.

2.

- If you are going to-morrow, get coolies. 리일 가랴 고논 고군을 엇으오.
- If you go to Chemulpo to-morrow you can't come here. 리일 체물포를 가고논 여귀논 못 오겟소.
- If you don't take care, you will break it. 조심 아니 흥고논 부러트리 리이다.
- You'll get wet if you don't take an umbrella. 우산이 업 고논 옷슬 적시 리이다.
- You can't stay here if you cry. 울 고논 여귀 외슬 수가 업다.
- If you let him have it, he'll spoil it. 가져가게 흥먼 상흥리이다.
- You'll be late if you don't hurry. 어서 하지 아니 흥고논 늦겟소.

3.

If he won't sell it for a thousand cash, give him two thousand. 열량에 팔지 아니 한거든 스무 량을 주오.

If you've rested sufficiently, begin to study. 다 쉬엿거든 공부 시작 하시오.

Well, if your head aches, go and lie down. 머리 압흐거든 가 누오.

If you don't want to, never mind. 슬커든 그만 두오.

If it suits you, take it. 맘에 맞거든 가지오.

Take this letter, and in case the man has gone, bring it back. 이 편지 가지고 가서 만일 그 사람 떠났거든 도라 가지고 오오.

If he is busy never mind. 바빠거든 그만 두오.

4.

Even if he had known how to swim, he probably would not have been saved. 헤엄을 할줄 알았실 지라도 살지 못 하였실 듯 하오.

Even if I explain it he probably will not understand it. 빌어 주어 도 알지 못 할듯 하오.

He probably wont come, even if he said he would. 온다고 하였 석도 오지 아니 할 듯 하오.

SEC. 9.—BECAUSE.

Because, may be rendered by any one of the Korean conjunctions having a causal effect. It is quite often, however, expressed, by the use of the verbal noun in 기 with the postposition 에 ; or by the use of a noun such as 7 ㅈ or 고, expressing reason or cause, with a postposition 에 or 로.

I prefer Chemulpo because it's cool. 체 물 포 셔 늘 흥 기 에
도 화 흥 요.

I waited because I thought it would clear. 날 이 기 일 줄 안 까 틈 에
기 득 렸 소.

He went because he had to. 불 가 불 갈 터 힌 고 로
갔 소.

It's colder to-day because it has snowed. 오 늘 은 눈 이 오 는 고 로
더 춥 소.

Because it was dangerous to stay in Sēoul the Japanese have gone to Chemulpo. 셔 울 잇 소 먼 위 틈 힌 즉
일 본 사 람 이 체 물 포
로 가 갔 소.

SEC. 10.—THEN.

In that case—그러면, 그런즉, 그러거든.

Then I don't think you will find one in Sēoul. 그러 흥 먼 셔 울 셔 흥 나 로
못 엿 을 듯 흥 요.

Then he may get well. 그런 즉 날 듯 흥 요.

Then you must give up smoking. 그러 커 든 담 비 를 쏜 허 야
흥 겠 소.

Then don't go. 그러 커 든 가 지 마 요.

SEC. 11.—THAT,

1 Introducing a statement—하고.

2 So that, in order that,—future verbal participle.

1.

I told Mr. Kim it would be all right for him to read it.

김석방 드려 보아도 무방
훈다고 하였소.

Did not the doctor say that 의원이 온천을 향해야도
he would have to try the 라고 아니 함을 더니
hot springs, to get well? 의가.

I heard from Mr. Pak that
some foreigner wrote
that letter.

2.

Open the door so that I **빛** **것** **치** **내** **여** **다** **봐** **게**
can see out. **문을** **열** **으**.

Please open the door so
that the air can come in.

Roll up your sleeves so
that they wont get wet.

Please tighten the net so
that the mosquitoes
won't get in.

모기 드려 오지 못 하게
모기 장을 단돈이 치요.

Take care that you don't slip. 밋그러지 잔게 조심 하
 여라.

SEC. 12.—THAN.

1 With the Comparative Degree,—**보다, 예석**. See. also Part I. ¶ 250, & Part II. Chap. VI § II.

2 Rather than,—출항리 or the verb 낫소 may be used.

3 More than, (*of quantity or number*).—

(a.) In affirmative sentences—ㅂ니다 or 입니다.

(b.) In negative sentences—**맞** **지**.

1.

A mule is stronger than a horse. 로새가 말 보다 세오.

Korea is more healthy than Japan.

조선 일본 보다 슈루가
토소.

It rains more frequently in Japan than in Korea. 조선 보다 일본은 비가 자주 오오.

2.

I had rather walk than ride.

등산것 보다 출하리 것
겉소.

I had rather write to him 보고 말하느 것 보다
than tell him to his face. 출하리 편지로 하겠소.

I had rather smoke cigars 지권연 보다 출하리 엽
than cigarettes. 원을 먹겠소.

I had rather die than go to
see the doctor.

의원을 보러 가는 것
보다 출하리 죽는 것이
낫겠소.

That fellow had rather starve than work. 그 놈은 일 하기 보다 굶는 거시 나흔 클노 아오.

I had rather live in Korea than Japan. 일본 보다 출하리 조선 살갓소.

3. (a).

It will cost more than five thousand cash. 오십 량 넘저시 쓰갓소.

I have waited more than an hour for you. 일시 간 넘어 기다렸소.

We have more than an hour yet. 아직 도 일시 간 너어 넘 와소.

You must put in more than a handful. 혼 줌 넘어 너히야 하갓소.

There were more than a hundred there. 거기 백명 넘어 외소 읍더이다.

That book has more than a hundred pages. 그 책에 백장 넘어 외소.

It is more than eighty ri to Chemulpo. 체물포 석지 칼십 리 넘어 되오.

I want more than ten pounds. 열 근 넘어 쓰갓소.

3. (b).

I shall not want more than ten pounds. 열근 밧기 논 아니 쓰갓소.

It will probably not cost more than two or three hundred cash. 이삼 량 밧기 논 아니 될 듯하오.

- You must not put in more **훈 줍 बाट 더 넛치**
 than a handful. **마오.**
- There are not more than **지금 항구에 비가 열척**
 ten ships in the harbor **बाट 업소.**
 at present.
- I can't stop more than **이삼 일 बाट 잇솔 수**
 two or three days. **업소.**
- There are not more than **넛 बाट 업소.**
 four.
- Here are no more senten- **여기 잇는 각 마티 말이**
 ces than are necessary **조천 말 즈세 히 비호**
 to a thorough know- **기에 쓸 만큼 बाट 업소.**
 ledge of Korean.

THE END.

明治廿三年四月廿日印刷
全 五月一日出版

米國學士

定價金四圓

著譯者 エッチ、ジー、アンドルヴード

神奈川縣士族

編輯兼 須原 徳義

神奈川縣平民

横濱市太田町五丁目
九十番地

印刷者 村岡 平吉

横濱市太田町五丁目
八十七番地

印刷所 製紙分社

横濱市太田町六丁目
九十四番地



[illegible]

NOV 9 1994

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

